

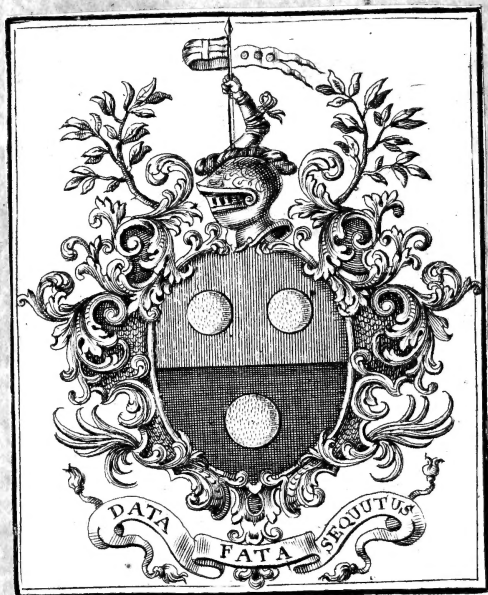
Historic, Archive Document

Do not assume content reflects current scientific knowledge, policies, or practices.



Hill
of Gardning
1608.

5-6
1722



From the library at
Chudington Castle, Kent.

R
58451
- H5

SB 97

#564

1608

Henry Theard

THE Arte of Gardening,

wherunto is added much necessarie
matter, with a number of Secrets: and the
Phisicke helps belonging to each heerb,
which are easily prepared.

Heer-vnto is annexed two proper Treatises, the
first Intituled *The meruailous gouernment, propertie,
& benefite of Bees, with the rare secrets of the
Honie and waxe*: the other, *The yearly
Coniectures, verie necessary for
Husband-men.*

To these is likewise ioyned a Treatise of the Arte of
Graffing and planting of trees.

Gathered by Thomas Hill, Citizen of
London.

J. Marshall



LONDON,
Imprinted by Edward Allde.
1608.



The Authours out of which this worke
of Gardening is gathered.

Sotion a Greeke writer.

Florentinus a Greeke writer.

C. Plinius.

M. Cato.

Iunius Columella.

M. Varro.

Palladius Rutilius.

Aristomachus.

Theophrastus.

Aristotle.

Didimus.

Dioscorides.

Democritus.

Galenus.

Paul Aegineta.

Petrus Andr.

Mathiolus.

Constan. Cæsar.

Hieronimus Cardanus.

And sundry others.



To the right worshipfull Sir *Henry*

Seamer Knight, Thomas Hill wisheth all
wealth and felicitie.



When I had ended these trauels and labors of mine (right Worshipfull Sir) I called to remembrance the two notable sayings of the well learned and worthy Philosopher *Xenophon*, who did not onely confesse, but rather with other wise men did agree, that that Arte was moste commendable, and of all men moste worthy to be allowed & accepted, which to a common wealth brought any kinde of profit and commoditie. And because this Art of Gardning is of it selfe verrey profitable, and bringeth moste necessarie commodities, both to Citties and Townes, therefore in my simple iudgement, it deserueth no small commendation. The beginning of it is very ancient; so that of no new inuention, but long ago found out, first by dame Nature, & after continued and augmented by the dilligent care and vigilant paines of the wise & skilfull Gardeners, by whose industrie & meanes, it is now growen to such perfection, as I thinke it therefore moste worthie to be accounted amongst other such good artes, as euery common wealth hath need of. And although it may appeare somewhat inferiour to other artes, yet notwithstanding the same is as profitable, & altogether as necessary as the others are: forsomuch as this is so linked and chained to the noble artes, both of Physicke and Surgerie, as by no meanes possible it may be seperated from the other, but rather as a dayly handmaiden, continually serueth them both; the which two (at this day) are had

The Epistle

in no smal reputation & renown, & that not without good cause, for so much as no common-wealth can be without them, & because these two cannot wel be performed without this third, therefore men haue cōtinually sought to bring it to perfection. And first the ancient Husbandmen tooke great paines therein: after them the learned Philosophers & other wise men, which from time to time haue obserued & noted such notable lessons & instructions, as (at this day) are common among them in all countries. This art being once knowne, and the vse so necessarie esteemed, hath caused wise men by a kinde of common consent, to place Gardens nere vnto Cities, Townes & Villages, as a storehouse and place, wherein might be kept, aswel al such hearbs as are fit for the helth & preferuation of mans body, as also al māner of pleasant floures & delectable herbs as are daily sought for and requited of the common people: and this Art now, what long experience, & long continuance of painful men, in trying and searching the condition and nature of euery ground, and their apines in bearing such seeds as should be sown therin, is growen to such a perfectiō, that now euery good Gardener can tell what ground is fit for such and such seeds, how it ought to be digged, dūged, & cast orderly into beds, and after the seeds are sown, how they ought to be watered & weeded, that therby the plants in cōming vp might the better prosper and come forward. Besides these necessary points, in ordering the ground, in chusing seedes apt for euery soile, and in obseruing the time fit for sowing, they haue left behinde them certaine meanes and wayes to auoid and drue away al such beasts, wormes, flies, with the like, as commonly annoy & hurt the workmanship of Gardeners: yea such cunning, wit and wisdom is contained in this Art of Gardning, that the wise and mighty Emperour *Diaulesian*, through the delight and pleasure he tooke therein (as writeth *Aelius Spartianus*) after he had reigned 18. yeres,

The Epistle.

left for a season the whole gouernmēt & rule of the empire: & forsaking the court, went vnto a mean house, hauing a garden adioyning thereto, where he with his proper hands, both sowed, set, & weeded the hearbs of his gardē: which kind of life so pleased him, that hardlye hee was intreated to take vpon him againe the gouernment of the Empire, so much did this quiet life & beautie of the Garden please him. This example may moue all other meaner men to haue the like felicitie & pleasure in Gardening, seeing so noble an Emperor chose rather to forsake his regal authoritie and power, and still to continue in that state of quiet life, affirming it farre better and happier estate to liue quietly among the faire & pleasant floures of the Garden, then to rule, & be daily called on & troubled with the serious and weightie affaires of the Empire. But heere I will stay my pen, least I seem ouertedious vnto your worship in so smal a Treatise, desiring your goodnes to pardon my bold attempt, and rather to behold the earnest zeale & affection of my willing mind born towards you, then to consider the simplenes of the style, and want of eloquence. I should haue been ashamed (right worshipfull sir) to haue ventured so far, as to dedicate this my third increase vnto your goodaes, were it not that the argument of the matter is both profitable and pleasant to be read: wherein is taught a number of worthie secrets, in the sowing and setting of the moste plants, with the great commodities they serue for in the vse of Physick: & were it not againe that I fully perswade my selfe, that your worship will rather accept the minde of the writer, then the manner of writing. Thus praying almightie God to send your worship long health, and the yeres of the worthy *Nestor*.

Your most humble,

Thomas Hill

The

The peface to the Reader and dilligent trauailer in
the Art of Gardening.

IT feemeth (louing Reader) uot without reason, which *M. Terentius Varro* writeth, that the ancient Philofophers named the Earth, the mother of all plants and crefcent things, and the manuring and drefling of it, to be an exercife both vertuous and profitable, which the antient *Romanes* & dilligent Husbandmen did well obferue, in that they from time to time did fo painfully labor, & dilligently feek out the vnderftanding & knowledge, not only of euery kind of earth, but to dig, dung, orderly drefle, & caft into fquare and euen beds euery ground; and after the fame, they dilligently learned the apt times which were moft conuenient to fowe or plant in, according to the increafe & decreafe of the Moone, with the afpeets of y^e Moone vnto fuch planets, as moft aptly ferue vnto the fame. When the feedes were thus orderly fowen, and fomwhat come vp, then they thoroughly learned that the often weeding and waring of the yong plantes, did caufe them the fafter to come vp. And in fuch places where the plants grow thick together, they by their painfull induftry learned to fet them thinner: to the end they might the better increafe & waxe bigger: and befides thefe, they carefully laboured, & dilligently fought out all fuch meanes, that might happely expell and deftroy the moft kinde of venomous and harmfull beaftes, wormes, flies and fuch like, that commonly annoy & eate vp the feedes & yong plants coming vps; And as their diligēce, great care, & painfull trauels beftowed in the Art of Gardning, deferved of all men worthy cōmendation, fo I vpon this occafion, think it not much digreffing from the purpofe to fet forth this treatife of mine, now the firft time increafed, to which I haue added fuch profitable and pleafant matter, as I found written either in the *Italian* or *Latine* tongue, that intreated of this Art: whose names (or the moft of them) do before appeare, digefted into the forme of a Table. And befides thefe, I haue adioyned fundrie pleafant fecrets, and the neceffarie commodities alfo, which moft of the herbes ferue vnto in the vie of phificks:
which

which now I haue performed in such sort, as the like hitherto hath not been published in the English tung. And for recompence of my industrie, I craue no other of thee (gentle Reader) but frendly reporting of this Treatise. Which if I finde, it shal encourage me to publish the other part, aptly to this belonging: which onely teacheth the perfect order of planting & graffing of the most trees in vse with vs, with the proper secrets taught in the ordering of them, right profitable to be vnderstood. But in the meane time look for a proper Treatise ioyned to this of Gardening, named **The Husbandmans coniectures**, vttering the right profitable notes, not onely of the cōdition of the yere, but other husbādly instructions, seruing necessarily to the vse and defence of catel, with the special gouernemēt to be followed each month throughout the yere, for the preseruatiō of health: and diuers other instructions right profitable to bee vnderstood. Vnto which besides, is annexed a right pleasant & profitable Treatise of the meruailous gouernment, order, and vse of the Bees, with the great commoditie both of their honnie & waxe, with their vse and rare secrets aswell in Phisick as Surgery. And this haue I rather ioyned to my Booke of Gardening, for that the honny Bees (after the minde of the ancient Gardners) be so profitable in a Garden. Also looke for a Treatise of mine, being in readines with the Printer, & intituled, **Certain pleasant problemes with other apt answers**, teaching frutesfull lessons for the preseruatiō of health, with other philosophicall demaunds, and their learned answers, vttering such vnknewen matter, as hetherto hath not been published in the English tung, gathered first by a learned Cardinall and philosopher, named *Fernandus Porzensus*, out of the *Arabians*, *Greekes*, and ancient Phisitions in the *Latine* tung, & now Englished by me for the commodity of many. Also sundry other Treatises be in a like readines with other Printers, whose names and titles I haue heere omitted, or rather ouerpasse for tediousnes of the Reader. Thus leauing (gentle Reader) to trouble you further, I commit you to God, wishing onely your gentle fauor to further these my rude attempts. *Et feliciter Vale.*



A friend to the Reader.

By tract of time things most obscure are manifested plaine:
In time the drie and hardest flint is pearst with drop of raine
By time we ioy, time leades our life, by time we doe possesse,
In time we haue that we desire, each thing both more and lesse.
Sith time of right deserues to haue more praise thā tūg can tel
In time let Hyll receiue reward, that hath begun so well.
Experience placde in wit profound, in time hath made to yeeld,
To him that whilome captiue was, a conquest in the feeld.
With painfull pen the Writer hath exprest in English plaine
The needfull aid & mightie force, that doth in heards remaine.
The time to plant, the time to set, the time to raise againe,
This man by treble diligence hath brought to light with paine.
Of things that were so high of price this Author by his skill (fil
Hath brought such plentie, that each wight may haue thereof his
For which this Author asks no good nor gaine of glee,
He couets no vaine glorious praise, as you may easily see.
His quaking quill hath forced more a good report to haue,
A light reward, a small returne this Author seemes to craue.
Wherefore young man or aged syre, else who so ere thou be,
That by misuenture or by will shalt chance this Booke to see:
Let cankred (enuie meete for hell) abandon euerie sense:
And rather grant to saue than spill, so help than worke offence
Yeeld thou due praise to him that meant not to offend,
So shalt thou see and well perceiue, whereto his worke doth tend.
So shalt thou know the good frō il, the right from wrong discern
So shall thy verdict framed force the Writer more to learne.

FINIS.



T H E

Art of Gardening:

Shewing the skilful ordering & care
to be bestowed on Gardens, with necessary
helpes, defences, and secrets.

What three points are to be learned of euerie Gardner, min-
ding to haue a fruitfull Garden: the health that may be
recovered by walking in the same, and the comoditie of
Gardens placed neere the Cittie. Chap. I



Seeing a fruitfull and pleasant Garden, can-
not be had without the good skill and diligent
minde of the Gardner or master of the ground,
neither can any profit arise by Gardning,
without cost and charges therein bestowed:
neither perfectly can it be attained vnto with-

What manner
of maister or
Gardiner a
fruitfull Gar-
den requireth.

out Art, instructing the due seasons of the yeare: It is there-
fore meete that these thinges be first cared for, prouided and
knowne: which being done, the Garden is made perfect, delect-
table, and profitable, and wee then receiue by it two speciall
commodities.

The first is profit, which riseth through the encrease of
Herbs and flowers: the other is pleasure, verie delectable
through the delight of walking in the same, which both giueth
health to mans body, and recouerie of strength after long sick-
nes, by commoditie of taking the fresh ayre, and sweet smel of
the flowers in the same. And of these two, Varro and Palladi-
us, willeth y^e Gardens be plac't neere to a Cittie, both for the
commoditie of those Herbes and Rootes seruing to Whi-
tke, as all other Herbs and flowers, which be profitable
for the citie, seeing that gardens placed far from the city, do ra-

Vtilite & plea-
sure ensueth
of well dressed
Gardens.

why Gardens
ought to be
neare hand.

ther hinder the apte bringing of all kinds of Hearbes and flowers vnto the market to be solde. And for this doth Ca- to commend greatly, that ground or farme place which is sit- uated nere vnto a citie: In which ground, also be set little trees and plantes to beare by vines, and that Willowes and Others be set in watery and wet places neere to riuers, and that the ground besides hath moyst and watery places or springes in it: whereas be Orchards also in most fruitfull and open places and that are well dunged, in the which all kindes of fruit may be set and planted. Place neare to the Citie (saith Caro) many and sundry kindes of Gardens, set and decked with all kindes of pleasant flowers, all rootes that be round, the sweet Pirrle tree, and many other necessarie thinges of like sort to be set and sown. And a Garden (es- pecially for pot-hearbes) must be moyst of it selfe, or else easie to be watered for fertilitie sake.

Of the standing of Gardens, the water necessarie to them, and of the properties of the ground, with the qualitie and temperatenes of the Aire, and condicon besides of the windes.

Chap. 2

where the best
& lawdablest
placing of a
Garden is,

AND now to the scituation and standing of a Garden. The most commodities and profitablest placing of a Garden, is (as Paladius writeth) that the same be neere to a plaine field, somewhat lying aslope, & hauing through it small courses of water running as by certayne distances one from the other through the Garden. But yet beware that these be not ouer great courses, for that the easie and small courses be more commodious. And this diligently wey, that better is a little ground of field, being well dressed and laboured, then a large ground hauing no painfull labour bestowed on it at all.

What commo-
ditie it is to
haue a well in
a Garden.

And further vnderstand, that to haue a wel in a Garden, is right necessarie, except the same may otherwise be watered with some Conduite, or small streame running by, or else be very neare vnto a running water, for water is a great nouris- her to hearbes: But if there be no wel nor sweet water run- ning by, then must you dig a pit (although & same will be very labourous)

labourous) to draw water therout, in that a Garden of necessity ought to be often watered, through which (as Plinie writes) it causeth the seeds sown, the sooner to spring vp, spread abroad, and to be the more plentifull. And therfore if you be minded to haue a well or pit that should continue with water, then (as Collumella teacheth) you must cause the same to be digged, when the Sun is in the last part of Virgo, which is in the month of September, befoze the Equinoctiall harvest or entring of the Sun into Libra: For at that season do men especially trie and finde out, what force and vertue the wells then haue: at what time the ground through the long drought of the summer, is then depriued both of moisture and rayne. But if you cannot well dig a pit, then make a little Pond or Cisterne (as Paladius teacheth) in the ground, whereby the raine falling all the winter, may run therein, and by that meanes you may well water your Garden in the hot summer. And if now you lacke all these meanes befoze taught, for the watering of your Garden, then shall you dig and make the beds of the Garden in most dry places, three or foure foote deepe and lower, that the banks about thereof being hard made together, may so keep in the water, which ordered on this wise doeth well defend the vines thereof, for that in time of the great drought, it is by that meanes watered, and the young & small plants be thereby the better procured to spring faster vp.

A secret to
cause water to
continue long
either in pit or
wel.

But if the Garden be ouercloyed with water, then dig (after thy discretion) deep gutters here and there in the Garden, whereby the water falling into them, may be so led into some deepe pit in the end of the Garden, made only for that purpose, and consider that in the ground and Farme places bordering neare vnto the Citie, the Gardens and Orchards should and ought to be nearest the house, and both well digged & turned in with dung, through the which satning, they may aptlye spring & plentifullier grow. And beware you make not your Garden neare to any barne, stable, or hay loft, so nigh as you can, least the chaffe & dust both of the Coorne and hay blouen abroad by the winde, fall vpon the herbs, & so by cleuing on, peirce through the leaues, which so peirced, do by and by after burne them,

them, as writeth Florentinus in his instruction of husbandry. And besides, the hard clinging and gathering together of such strawes, and dust of hay blowen abroad by the winde in the garden, doth so cause a great annoyance, both to the hearbs & plants growing therein. And further take heed, that the aire about the garden be not euill, and infected with the vapors of ditches and stinking puddles, standing neere vnto it, for that these doe not onely infect and corrupt the plants, but dull mens spirits by walking therein. And in consideration heereof, you shall vnderstand, that euery aire, which is some colde after the Sun be set, and soone hot after the Sun be risen, is both subtil and wholsome: But that aire which is contrary to this, worketh the contrary. And besides, the aire most to be refrayned, is that, which wringeth and bindeth hard the hart and doth make straight the attraction of aire.

What annoyance the Vapours of stinking ditches doth cause.

And as concerning the temperatnes of the aire, and wholsomenes of the place, a garden in colde countries and places, ought to haue the free sky or firmament open toward the east or towards the south part, especially if the same be in such a garden or orchard, that hath young plants or trees set in it: taking heed, least that by any great high hill standing betwene it & those parts of Heauen, it be so excluded from the comfort and aide of these two parts, and so either through the North, where (to vs) the Sun is farthest off, or the late Sun shining of the west, where the sun onely shineth at his going downe, the plants, seeds and sets, be so nipped and destroyed with the colde, so long vering them.

How in hot countries a garden ought most apply to stand,

But if thou canst (saith Caro) let thy garden be at the foote of an hill, and that it beholdeth or lieth open to the south part in some wholsome place, and that the hill defendeth the sharpe colde of the North side, that might otherwise nip and harme the plants and sets comming by.

But in hot countries, let the faces of gardens be looking or lying open to the north part, which not only is more profitable, but also pleasanter and commodiourer to health. And a marriesse ground is euermore to be refused, how soeuer the same be, especially if it lye open toward the South or West part,

part, and that customably in the sommer, the same be thoroughlie dized vpppe, which so engendereth the Pestilence, and diuers noysome and hurtfull diseases, that greatly harne gardens.

And consider also the nature of the Mote standing about, or the water running by your garden, whether the same sendeth or vapoureth forth (for the most part) euery noysome or stinking aire, which might so annoy you, or the sets, hearbs, and plants, for such is the property of many little rivers: and therefore where any such like is, dresse or plant no garden nêr vnto the same.

The qualitie of Motes about gardens are to be considered.

And last, the windes are to be considered, for that the south windes be hot and moyst, & the north windes colde and drie, and the east windes be betweene hotnesse and coldnes temperate, yet drier then the west windes: and the East winds generally be alwayes hotter then the West, and yet the West windes be somewhat moister then the East.

The quality of the fourc windes.

Of the consideration and chosing out of good & excellent ground, and the knowledge of euery earth. Chap. 3.

And there is much to be considered besides those thinges which we haue hitherto spoken of in the nature and goodnes of a ground: if so be you desire to knowe a fruitfull, profitable and battell ground: For euery ground doth not kinde lie bring vp Garden hearbes. And therefore after the minde of the ancient Husband-men, you shall consider in this manner, by taking a clod of the same earth in your hand, and marking whether the same be white and bare, or leane with sand, without any mixture of earth: either all chalke, or naughtie and filthy sand or grauell, or drie barren great grauell, or stonie barren and glittering dust, or if it be saltie or bitter, or continually wet and moist. For all those be right noxious and great defaults and incommodities, contrary to a fruitfull ground.

The nature and goodnes of euery ground ought to be knowne

And you shall also trie a rotten clod, if the same be almost blacke, and able enough to couer it selfe with his owne grasse,

The triall of. and of sundry colours: which if it be thin or mouldie, must garden ground be fastned and brought together by fat earth mixed therewith.

But now you shall knowe a fat ground, if you take a small How you may know a good ground. clod, and sprinkle the same with sweet water, and so knead it: which, if the same be clammy, and sticke to your fingers, then may ye be out of doubt, that it is fat earth. Also dig a furrowe

The triall of sweet earth fit for gardens.

and fill the same againe with earth, which if the earth dooth after gape or open, then it is a slender and leane ground, but if it reacheth out, then it is a fat ground. And that also is a meane ground, which doth gape but little, and this ground also must be sweete, which you shall easily trie out by taste thereof, if that out of a part of the ground, which most you mislike, you take a clod, putting the same into an earthen pan, and moistning it with fresh and sweete water, into which dip your finger, and so taste on your tongue how it reliseth and saoureth, so by that shall you knowe the sweetnesse of the same.

What earth is meetest for Gardens.

And that ground also is thought to be the best for Gardens, which in the sommer is nether drie, nor clayie, nor sandie, nor rough, nor through the heat of Sommer full of chaps. For that the ground which is so drie in the sommer, doth perishe all such seeds or plants sowne or set therein, or else maketh them shoote by very small and slender: & the clayie ground bindeth too hard through the heat of the Sunne, and the sandy and rough ground worke contrarie to the other, in that they neither nourishe the young plants, nor keepe the water any time falling on them. And to be short, you must euermore choose a fat and loose ground, which needeth but small labour, and yieldeth also plentifullest and greatest fruite. But that ground is most to be refused, which is drie and thick, and both leane and colde. And among all kinde of grounds, the chalcie and red ground are most to be refused. And of this, Varro doth commend that ground, which of it selfe being gentle and pliable, bringeth forth *Maluorthis*, otherwise named *Danwortz*. And that ground also doth *Collumella* commend, which naturally bringeth forth of his owne accord, both elmes and wilde young springes, and those trees whether they be

A fat and loose ground is best commended for Gardens.

The triall of a fruitfull ground.

slowg

Slowe trees or Bullaste trees, and wilding or Crab-trees. And on such wise is a fruitfull ground tried out and knowen by such thinges which the same bringeth forth by the onely doing of Nature. And yet euery ground at times convenient, may by the dunging, be made more fruitfull and plentiful, or bigger yielding.

Any ground
by dunging
may be made
fruitfull.

How a Garden may diuers waies be fenced and inclosed:
the maner and secret in making a liuely and strong hedge

Chap. 3

When you haue thus chosen an apt and fit Plotte of ground to dig a Garden in, then must you in handsome maner, (calking the vtter compasse of it as either foure square, round, or otherwise) enclose the same round about, and beset and fence it throughout, before you goe about to dresse it by, or sowe any thing in the same. For that Gardens being not well fenced and closed about before the sowing and setting of any thing in the same, be many wayes indamaged as well by beastes, as by theeuers breaking into them.

And there be many and sundry sorts of fencing and closing in of gardens, as after shall appeare. As first Varro nameth or counteth that a naturall inclosure which is set about with yong trees or thornes, hauing in it the roots of a quick hedge, which we call a quickset hedge, so the same shall not be in danger of the wanton waifairing mans firebrand passing by, although he should put fier to it, and that is named a wilde and rude inclosure, which either is made of rude and shrubbed wood, or of willow, or bushes hauing no life, which we name a dead hedge. And in olde time the Romans used to inclose and fence their gardens with stakes and laths, set very thicke in order, and with small rods watled in together, or else by boaring large holes through great stocks of trees, through which railes or great poles might run two together, or three together: and so then raise and fasten a boord along, or stocks of trees, or such like thinges: which manner we now name Paling, when the same is done with Boarde.

And

And that fencing, of the ancient Authoꝝ is named a warlike inclosure, which is framed like to that which the Souldiers make as a defence about their Tents, and such a one ought to bee made neere common high waies, oꝛ by Riuer, that the Garden might not be indamaged by beaſts, theeuẽs, noꝛ land floods. And foꝛ this cause the ancient men framed theſe on this wiſe: as firſt a conuenient and apt ditch oꝛ trench was caſt by and made about the garden oꝛ field, that it might ſo receiue all the raine water falling thereabout: and it had alſo a ridge oꝛ ſlope paſſage in it, that the water might the freelyer paſſe from the bottome. And there was beſides, an high heape of earth on the in-ſide next adioyning to the ditch brinke, ſo drie and hard, that a man could not eaſily climbe oꝛ paſſe ouer it.

Alſo there were certain which made ſuch ſteepe ſteps without any ditch, which they named walles, And they of old time alſo named that a builded inclosure, which was made of drie ſtones, oꝛ ſlate laide one vpon another, & that in diuers forms: Foꝛ either the ſame was made with clay & ſtones, woꝛkmanly and finely built (in thoſe places eſpecially) by which quarries of ſtone were neere vnto, oꝛ of ſuch as were of abilitie to get ſtoꝛe otherwiſe. And either they made their incloſures of baked oꝛ vn Timered together, and framed like to the walles of an houſe.

The profit & commoditie of a quickſet & ſtrong hedge

But the profitableſt hedge of all (eſpecially in the fieldes) and leaſt of coſt, is that which is made with Byars, & thoꝛnes mixed oꝛ ſet together: foꝛ this hedge and incloſure will indure an infinite time. And therefore this hedge of the ancient huſbandmen was moſt commended, foꝛ that the ſame was well knowne to them, that the Briar would not lightly periſh and decay, vnleſſe the ſame had beene plucked vp by the rootes: And after the iniurie alſo of the fire, it both reneweth and ſpringeth the better.

The making of a quickſet hedge.

The place that you determine to encloſe, muſt after the beginning of September, when the ground hath beene well ſoked with raine, be trenched about with two furrowes, a yarde diſtant one from y other: the deapth and breadth of euerie one of them muſt bee two foote, which you muſt ſuffer to lie

lie emptie all winter, prouiding in the meane time the seedes Collumella that you meane to sow in them, which must be the berries of willeth after sharp thornes, briers, hollye, wilde Eglantine, which the the Ides of Greekes cal Kunosbaton, dog brier. The berries of these you February: must gather as ripe as you may, and mingle them with the flower or meale of tares, which when it is sprinkled with water, must be put vppon olde ropes of shippes, or any other ropes: the ropes being thus handled and dryed, must be layed vp in some boarded floore. And in the place round about where the hedge shall run, they wil, two furlong to be eared and digged, three foote asunder, and a foot and a halfe deepe: this they will to be done in the end of the Equinociall of the harvest, when as the ground is well moistned with shouers.

And they will also that those furrowes soe lye all the winter opened and vncouered, in preparing the seedes in a readines to sow against the time. And after that, in the end of February, they will to lay the saide ropes at length in the furrowes, and couer them (so lyeing) with thin and light earth, and to water the seedes againe, if neede of the season shall so require: which they will so to be ordered, in that these seedes of the thornes, cannot other wise shoote vp and grow, if they were ouermuch couered with earth: as this day they will not to be done when the winde bloweth out of the South west. So A witty secret in the fencing of a garden, within xxx dayes after doe the thornes shoote vp, which by pretie helpes and short props ought to be directed, that shooting vp further, they may so supply the boyd spaces. Another way is this: First they plant young elder trees, three foote asunder, and they take the brambles & wilde brier, & put them in long lumps of claye or earth, & set them here and there betweene the elder trees, couering them orderly with earth, and in the comming vp of the young plantes, they dig about and water them, if neede so require: & within 3. yeares after, the hedge will keepe out both thiese and beast. But after the three yeares growth, the ancient husbandmen will that this hedge should be burnt euery yeare once, for that by the burning they shoote out & ware stiffer, harder and sharper. And to conclude, this is an vniuersall way, & the surest maner to enclose all gardens.

Another way of making a quicke-set hedge.

Of the first Maze. Chap. 5.



Here by the way (gentle Reader) I doe place two proper Mazes, the one before this chapter, and the other after, as proper adornments vppon pleasure to a Garden, that who so liketh hauing such roome in their Garden, may place the one of them, which liketh them best, in that void place of the Garden that may best be spared for the onely purpose to sport them in at times: which Mazes being workemanlike handled by the Gardiner, shall much beautifie them, in diuising foure sundry fruits to be placed in each of the corners of the Maze, and in the middle of it, a proper herber decked with Roses, or else some tree of Rosemarie, or other fruite at the discretion of the Gardiner.

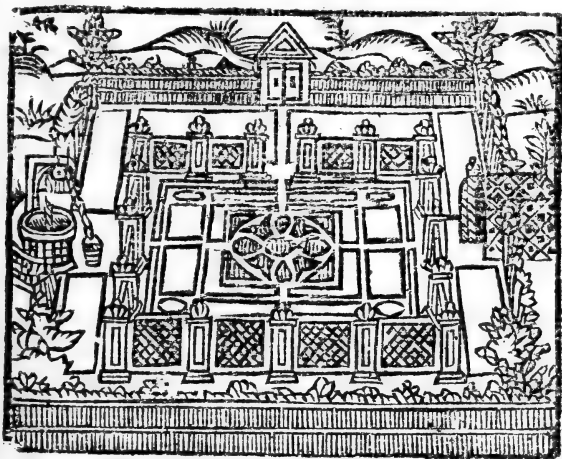
Of the dung and dunging of Gardens, with the digging, dressing, leuelling and disposing of the quarters and beds. Chap. 6.

The apt times of digging and dressing the ground for euery season.

For semuch as in the Haruest and Spring time, be many thinges sown in the Garden, therefore it behoueth to dig by, dung, & labor that part of the ground in the spring time, which you intend to sowe in Haruest, that the same may so serue

serue all the winter througħ. And those parts of the Garden which you intend to sowe in the spring time. that they may bring forth their fruite in the Summer, those parts apply and turne by toward the North. And this shall you so digge and dresse, when as the earth shall not be ouer moyst nor drie.

And that ground also which you will haue in a readines to sowe in the Haruest, must be turned vp in the moneth of May, whereby the heate of the Sunne and all the Summer througħ may so breake and loose the cloods, or burne or wyther the rootes of the hearbes left in the earth.



And after that the quarters and beds of the Garden, be thus finely ordered and turned in with dung, and sown also for the winter, then in the cold winter season, before the yong plants be come vp, they must be defended and nourished with dung (as by sprinckling it on the beds) that it may the better defend the yong plants from the superfluous colde and corrupting in the deepe of winter. But the grounds which you will sowe in the spring, must be digged about the Calends of Nouember, & you shall so let it lie digged vp after the Haruest, to be burnt and consumed by the cold and sharpe hoarie frests.

What ought to be done after the quarters of the Garden be thus ordered and sown for the winter.

For like as in the Summer the heat of the Sun doth scathe & parch the ground, enen so doth the bitterness of the cold vnloose

Note that
good dung
maketh a
good ground
the better, and
greatly amen-
deth an ill
earth.

Hôw dung
ought to be
ordred:

The worthy-
nes of dungs:

Asses best
commended.

Next Kine,
Oxen, sheep,
horse, goates:

New dung is
vnprofitable
for Gardens.

Swines, Pige-
ons, & Doves
dung best for
pot-herbes.

the same into small partes.

And after the winter is ended, then must that part of the garden be dunged, so that when the time of sowing is nere at hand, then that place of the Garden fūe dayes before shall be weeded, stoned, and dunged againe, and after that digged again, and with the diligent and often digging, so turned vp, that the earth and dung be well mixed together, and not to lye altogether at the rootes of the plantes, but that first the earth be thin cast, and after the dung, and then the earth againe to couer the same. For by that meanes shall neither the young plants be burned, nor the heate of the dung hastilye breath forth.

And the best and worthiest for this purpose, is Asses dung, because it bringeth vp least weedes: and the next to this is dung of Kine, Oxen, Horses, Sheepe, and Goates, so that it be not aboue a yeare olde, hard, and drie, the which also hath his full strength, and bringeth vp least weedes: for if the dung shall be older, it profiteth nothing, for that is of lesse strength: and yet in Gardens the new dung being three dayes old, shall well suffice and serue the turne. But that which men make, although it be thought most excellent, yet it is not so needfull to be desired, vnles that either the ground be barren, grauelly or a most loose sand, hauing no strength or force in it, which so being, needeth the greater helpe of nourishment in the dunging. And the Swines dung is thought very ill, for that the same is hot. Also the Pigeons and Doves dung is most hot. And yet althes (to dung with) is thought very good: and especially for pot-herbes, being finely sifted: the which for his naturall heat doth not onely refresh the earth, but slayeth and dyueth away all flies, and all kinde of wormes, snailles, and such like beastes that annoy the herbes.

And the like in a maner doth the pigeons dung, so that the same be scattered like seeds on the ground, whereby to season ground the better: and not on heapes, like the laying of the ore or horse dung.

And this also conceiue, that a watry Garden ground needeth more dunging: & a dry ground the lesser dunging: and be-
side;

sides these, you may dung your grauelly ground with chalker, if so be you can get no cattels dung, and the chalkie or ouer thicke ground, you may dung with grauell, for the lacke of o^rther dung. And by that meanes, such garden grounds be not onely made battle and good of yeeld, but become also beautifull, as writeth Collumella.

What to be done in the lack of dung.

And Plinie writeth, that when you dung your garden, let the winde then blowe out of the West, and the Moone decreasing of light, and die that season so nigh as you can. For by that meanes doth the ground yeeld the plentifuller.

What to be obserued in dunging the Gardens.

And now after the new digging and turning vp againe, about the middle of Januarie, the Garden must then be garnished with hearbes, before the quarters and beds be cast out and deuised. And you may make the herbers either straight running vp, or else vaulted or close ouer the head, like to the vine herbers now adates made.

And if they be made with Juniper wood, you neede to re-
paire nothing thereof for ten yeares after: but if they be made with willow poles, then must you new repaire them euery 3. yeare after: And he which will set Roses to run along about his herber, or beds round about his herber, must set them in Februarie.

Juniper poles best commended for the building of herbers.

And the beds of Roses be commonly set in a mosse short furrowe, or be placed by alleys round about the garden, whether ye set them in slips, or sowe them in seedes. And Palladius writeth, that we may not thinke those to be the seedes of the Rose, which growe in the middle of the flower, in colour like to the golde: but that the seedes be in that which is like to a small peare in the vpper end of the stalk.

How Roses ought to be set.

And the seedes be then ripe to be gathered, when the grapes be full ripe, which ripenesse of them by their fuskish and browne colour, and by their softnes may be knowen. And in the like manner you may doe, if you wil sowe that sweet tree or flower named Iacemine, Rosemary, or the Pomegranate seedes, vnles you had rather decke your herbers comelier with vines.

Which be the seedes in the Rose.

And when the herbers be set & made about the walke of the

Walkes & al- Garden, then the ground new digged, must be deuided into
lies be neces- borders and beds, leauing apart that roome and space, which
sarie in a gar- you will bestowe vpon walkes and bowling allies, the which
den. allies and walkes you shall sift ouer with the finest sand, least
by raine and showres, the earth should cleaue and clagge on
your feete: and this done, you shall leuell your beds & bor-
ders of a height and bzeadth by a line layd out, whereby to
weede the hearbes.

Why beddes
ought to be
leuelled euen
of a bredth.
What length
& bredth Pal-
ladius willeth
the beds to be

And for this cause the same ought to be made, least that in
weeding the hearbs, they tread them & the yong seeds downe,
And therefore let the weeders gos by the paths and alleys,
weeding the one halfe first, and the other after. And the beds
saith Palladius, must be made long and narrowe, that is xii.
foot in length, and six in bzedth, and spaces betweene the lar-
ger, whereby the beds may the better be weeded cleane on
each side.

And let the borders or edges of beddes be raised two foote
high in moist or watry places: but in drie places, it shall be
sufficient to raise them one foote high.

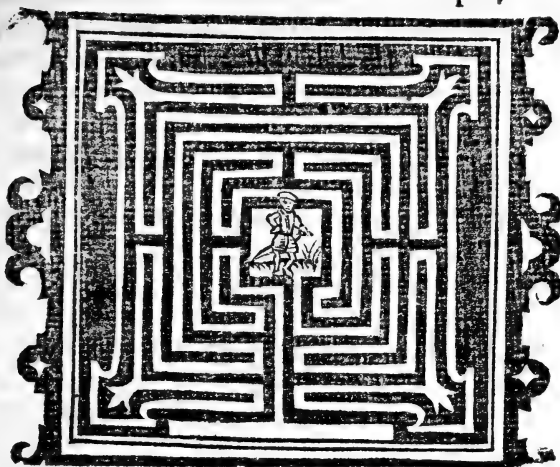
How the wa-
ters lying in
the allies may
be led from
place to place.

There must be made also certaine little allies or gutters,
by which the moisture in watry places may so run forth.

And those allies besides must be deeper then the beds, that
the water gently poured forth, by a watring pot, from the
upper part, may the lightlier soake into the gutters or allies.

And where the beds be well watered, and that water stan-
deth in the allies by, then may you from thence leade the wa-
ter into some other necessarie place, which needeth watring.

Of the second Maze. Chap. 7



AND heere also I place the other Maze, which may be like ordered and vsed, as I spake before, and it may either be sette with Scope and Time, or with winter Saue-ry and Time: for these doe well endure all the Winter thoro-ue greene. And there be some which set their Mazes with Laurender Cotton, Spike, Marigolam, and such like. But let them be ordered in this point as liketh best the Gardner, and so an end. For I do not heere set forth this, or the other Maze before exprested, for any necessarie commoditie in a garden, but rather appoint either of these (which liketh you best) as a beautifying vnto your garden: for that mazes and knots aptly made, doe much set forth a garden, which neuerthelesse I referre to your discretion, for that all persons be not of like abilitie.

Certaine precepts & rules of ancient men, both in the choise and proper sowing of seedes. Chap. 8.

THE Garden, as Palladius writeth, which lyeth vnder a gentle & wholsome aire, and hath a Fountaine, Spring,

oꝛ sweete water running by it, is in a manner good enough of it selfe, and needeth lesse instructions foꝛ the sowing thereof.

The temperatenes of time necessarie to sowing.

The seedes sown in due chosen time, as concerning the weather and the Moone, doe the sooner come vp: but sown in warme and sunnyp places, oꝛ well lying in the Sunne, doth speediliest bꝛeake forth and shoote vp.

In cold seasons sowe not.

And beware of sowing any seedes, the winde then blowing out of the north, oꝛ in very colde dayes, foꝛ that in those dayes the seeds be much hindered thꝛough the colde: and therefore foꝛ the sowing of your seedes choose warme and temperate dayes, foꝛ the better comforting and spreading forward of your seedes lying on the earth.

A defence foꝛ the seedes sowne.

And if after the seedes sown, you doubt either the coldnes oꝛ hotnes of the season, in the schꝛching oꝛ burning of your seedes, then couer your beddes with the chaffe of coꝛne, and with sticks a crosse ouer the same, and small reedes oꝛ twigs also laide aptly vppon them, foꝛ the better defence, as Columella writeth.

When plants are to be remooued.

And all hearbes in a manner may well be remooued, when they shall be somewhat growen and come vp, and the earth (at the remoouing shall not be ouer dꝛye. The newer seedes that do soonest spring vp be these: the Leeke, Sine, Cucumber and the Courde.

The varietie in comming vp of new and old seedes.

And the olde seedes that do speedilier spring vp be these: the Parcelly, Beetes, Cresses, Sauery, Hariozan, Pennyroyall, and Coliander: And the seedes sown in hot places do speedilyer shoote vp in the stalkes, and sooner yeelde forth seede.

And the seedes that soonest bꝛeake and come vp, be Basill, Spinage, Pauewe, which is a kinde of Rapes, and Rocket: foꝛ all these at the third dayes sowing, appeare aboue the ground, & yet the slowest of all seedes commeth vp is Parcelly.

A secret to make Leekes & onions begin the head.

And to put many seedes into one hole in the ground, shall all gather into one substance, and bring forth the greater frute: Like as you shall put many heads of Leekes oꝛ Onions into one hole together, and treading the blades often downe in the growing and shooting vp.

And

And that the Lettice, Parcelly, Rocket & Basill, may grow altogether out of one stem or stalk, take 2 or 3 small balles of the Goat or sheepes dung, and those breake, and mingle the seedes together in them, & after role altogether into a round ball, which after set into new Cow-dung, and couering the same with well oressed and fine earth, that gently water.

Rare seerets in causing sundry plants to grow out of one stalk.

And some do take two or three of the sheepe or goats dung, and breaking them, do so mingle the seedes and dung together, which they after lap in a linnen cloth, and order the same in the ground as afoze is taught.

A secret not unlike to the former.

And that many saours & tastes may be felt in one hearb, take first of the Lettice two or three seedes, of the Endiue so many, of the Smalage the like: of the Basill, the Lecke and of the parsley (of all these three) so manye seeds as of the other: then put all the seedes into a hole together, and in such sorte that the seeds may touch one another: but this before remembred, that you put them together in the dung of a horse or Dre without any earth mingled with them. And thus sowed, there will after spring vp a plant, hauing so many saours or tastes, as there were sowed together.

A maruelous secret in causing many saours to be felt in one hearbe.

Of the times in sowing and proper ordering of seeds, with the watring & weeding of the yong plants in the comming vp: the diuers maners of remoouing and setting againe of the hearbes being somewhat growne vp.

Chap. 9

Although the ancient husbandmen appoint certaine pre-script times, as by months and daies, yet the same ought to be considered according to the nature of the place and condition of the ayre, so that you wey this with your selfe which wee shall after teach, that there bee certaine seedes which doe more speedilier spring vp, and certaine other seedes which are more later comming vp.

The nature of the ground & qualitie of the aire are to be considered in the sowing of seedes.

And as touching the Garden hearbes, they (after their sowing) require no other diligence and care, but onely raking, weeding and watring. For that by due raking, both the stones are holded away from the new springing seedes, and all the

What is required after the sowing of garden seeds

noyous weedes that hinder the hearbs comming vp, are then better woyn away.

What kinde
of weeding
hearbes is best
commended.

And yet the cleaner weeding and plucking vp of all rootes must be done with the hand: which differeth from the killing of weedes by raking. And of these also which moske harne the beddes newe sown, is, to walke much by them, or to mooue the Earth, when the same shall be very loose: for thereby it setteth fast the ground, that it maketh weedes the harder to be plucked vp, after the falling of great store of raine.

The seasona-
ble time of
watering, and
what kinde of
water ought
to be vsed.

And the watering of your dye beddes which often hapneth for lacke of raine and moysture, about the hot and dye Dogge-daves, must chiefly be done with luke warme water, and that euerye morning and euening as Plinie writeth, if needs so require, with that water which timely in the morning is drawn out of no deepe Well, and reserued in some wooden vessel for threer howres before, or as some do write, that it be set vnder the Skye for two or threer dayes together, that the Sunne may the better worke vpon it.

The manner
and forme of
watering of
Hearbes.

And water not your beddes too much, for that the same harmeth and weakeneth the rootes and plantes: And to this water also mingle a little dung, the which shall giue a better nourishment with the water to the hearbes and young plantes comming vp, if it be leasurly and gentily watered forth.

And the young tender plantes new sprung vp, neede lesse watring then the stronger growen, which desire a great deale the more watering, yet the same to be leasurly done, that all the rootes may drinke alike of it, and not be hastily drowned with water. But colde, and salte water drawn out of deepe Welles, is most hurtfull vnto all plantes and hearbes, except the same stand for certaine howres in the hot Sunne, and be watered warme on the plantes.

And such seedes as ought onely to be sown neare the end of Haruest, as in the moneth of September or October, that they may all the winter continue, and be soaked in the ground, be these: Carlike, Danyons, Scallions, young Leekes,
heads,

heads, great Barlike and Mustard-seede.

If of necessitie you must plant or sowe any thing in a salte ground, then that whatsoever it be, must be planted in the end of Harvest, or sowed the like, that the euillnes, and corruptnesse of the grounds, may be washed away with the winter showers.

What is to be doone in a salt ground.

And if you set any young Trees in that ground, let that there-about, be mixed with a quantitie of sweete Earth and Riuer sand.

And your seedes (that you minde to sowe) may not be above a yeare olde, and that bruised, be whiter within, and heuier, least being corrupt by oldenes, they cannot encrease and come forward.

the knowledge of seeds meete for sowing.

The third moneth sowing agreeeth in colde and snowey places, where the qualitie of Sommer is moyst, but seldome in other places the like hap correspondeth.

And seedes thre moneths olde, will better agree, if that in hot places they be sowed in the Harvest.

And you may plant and sowe in your ground (if you will) the best kindes of euery fruite, seedes, slips, or graffes, but set and sowe that (which you knowe by experience) will best prosper and come forward in your ground.

But any newe kinde of seedes, and not tryed before in your ground, you may not put your whole hope that undoubtedly they will prosper, in that it is doubtfull whether they will prosper or no.

And in moyst places, the seedes do sooner spring vp, then in the drie: and this vnderstand, according to the kinde and proper nature of them. And of this, the choice of ground in the sowing of your seedes much auailleth.

And all such settes and seedes doe seldome prosper, which be sowed or sett in shadowey places. And such thinges also as do flower, in the time of their flower bearing, are not to be handled. And all kinde of pulses, as Peason, Fitches, Laces, &c. (as the Greeke authors willeth) must be sowed in drie grounds, except the Beanes, which ought only to be sowed in moyst grounds.

shadowe places hurtful to plants.

What seedes may be sown at pleasure of the gardener.

And such seedes, which at will and pleasure may be sown (as both in harvest and spring time) vnto your vse and commoditie, and that in a warme and comfortable season, and fruitfull ground, be these: the Lettice, the Colewoortes, the Parsnips, the Carrets, the white Poppe, the Artechokes, and diuers other seedes.

A consideration in the sowing of seeds in hot and colde ground.

And in colde Countries the harvest sowing must be done earliyer, and the spring later. But in hot Countries, the Harvest sowing must be later, and the spring timelier.

And whatseuer you will sowe, let the same be done after the fourth day of the new Moone, and so continue vnto the full of the Moone, but no longer: in that it oftentimes so happeneth, that the sowing of seedes in the decrease or wane of the Moone, prospereth not, as witnesseth Auenezra.

And such things also as you will cut down or gather, let the same be done in the wane of the Moone. But such things as you minde to sell, let those be gathered in the full Moones, because the greater they do then abide, the vendibler, or readier they will be to be solde.

what season best commended for the sowing of seedes.

And all seedes which be kindly sown, be rather sown in temperate wether, when as some showers of raine moistning the ground, fall a day or two before, rather then in a dry season and colde aire: for that the seedes so sown, do sprout lier spring vp through the warmenes and comfort of the season, then in a colde aire, which of propertie doth both include them in the earth, and keepeth them long in coming.

And yet it oftentimes so happeneth, that although the seedes be perfect good, yet they spring not after their sowing, through some malice of the celestiaall bodies. And for that cause sowe sundry seedes together, for the surer triall and prooofe of them.

When plants may best be removed, and of the commodity by removing them.

And after all these, the most or greatest number of plants, may well be removed, when they be somewhat sprung vp, so that the ground be not ouer drie nor ouer moyst.

For by removing such plants may the better be weeded (being thin set) and grow the better vnto their full bignes, and be also sweeter, so that they gently loose and weede away all wayes

wayes all the euill weedes that spring vp amongst them which otherwise would hinder and take away their nourishment. And those hearbes also which ought not to be remoued, after their yong comming vp, must be thinne solwen, but those which ought to be remoued, must be thicke sown together.

A good instruction of sowing seedes.

Certaine helpes and secrets for the garden seedes, as wel before, as after the sowing of them, that they may not be harmed by any inward or outward meanes. Chap. 10.

And now in vaine hath the Gardner (or any other) bestowed his pains, in the diligent laboring of his ground, and committing of seeds to the earth: if in like manner he seek not those meanes which may best auoyde the harme of the birds scraping vp the seedes, and the other beastes and worms creeping in the earth. And to auoyd these harmes and damages, marke diligently these instructions heereafter taught.

And first if your seedes a little before the sowing, be steeped or soaked in the iuice of the hearb named the house Leeke, or for lack of sufficient plentie of the hearbe, to lay the seedes all a day and night in, you may in stead thereof, seeth the hearbe in faire water, and with that water you may sprinkle your seedes solwen in the beds, that they may so draw to them, and drinke in of that iulce, which by that meanes doth only defend, that neither the Birds, Ants, or Wismers, Field mice, nor any other vermine, will at any time after touche those seeds or young plants after sprung vp, but cause them encrease the better, as writeth the worthy Collumella, who of experience is often noted true.

Worthy secrets in preseruing the seedes sown in the earth without harm

And Afrycanus writeth, that if you seeth a little wheat or barley in wine, or soake it in the wine with the roote Hellebore, or otherwise pofewort, and after scatter it in the paths & alleys about the garden, that the same not onely defendeth the seeds fro the injury of birds, but maketh them seeme as dead, or rather as drunken by eating thereof: which being on this wise, he willoth to hang by the legs on a stick vnto the scattering of the other birds.

A secret that the seedes be not destroyed of Birds.

A maruelous
matter of the
decoction of
Riuer creuises

And the saide Africanus writeth, that the decoction of the Riuer creuises, spzinckled on the seedes, doth both defend the seeds, and the young plants sprung of the seedes, that neither the Birds, nor any other creeping thing, wil after (a matter greatly to be marueiled at) neuer touch them. And ther a be some, which will, after the young plants be somewhat sprung vp, spzinckle onely of the water wherein the creuises be sodden, as a sure defence, which many times hath bene tried and found true by sundry, if so be the same be done at a certaine time of the Moone.

A secret of the
Greeke and la-
tin husband-
men for prefer-
ring of seedes
very notable.

And the powder of the Varts hoine, either filed or shauen, and the same infused in sweet water, and the seeds befoze the sowing soaked therein, or spzinckled with that water after the sowing, doth well defend the young plants from being gnawed of any creeping thing.

And the seeds after the sowing, spzinckled with the brine water made of Nitre, doth well defend them from being eaten of woymes, ants, and such like, as Virgill in his husbandry writeth.

And the Greeke Autho^r Apuleus writeth, the onely spzinckling of wine on the seedes and ysung plants, to be a meanes of the better strength and encrease of them.

And certaine Greeke writers of husbandry allowed of Plinie, Collumella, and Palladius, affirme, that the rootes of the wilde Colwumber, soaked in sweet water for a day and a night, and that water often spzinckled on the seedes, & the next day following (those seedes couered with a blanket) and after sowed in the ground, that then they be defended from all noy^s some woymes and other creeping things.

And the Greeke Autho^r Apuleus writeth, as a safegard vnto your seedes, that if befoze the digging and casting vp of your beds, you draw about the Garden the speckled tode and putting him into an earthen pot, you doe after bury him in the middle of your Garden, or ouerwhelm him with earth in a deepe furrowe, which let there remaine vnto the sowing time, and after digge him vpe, casting him a great way off least the plants growing thereabout, might become bitter

and

secrets of the
speckled tode

and vnfauoriz. And the Egyptian and Greeke authours of Husbandry write, that the young plants shall not be gnawen or harmed of any creeping thing, if the seeds be sown about the first quarter of the Moone.

And Democritus writeth, that if you put ten Sea or Riuier Cresses into a vessell full of water, and couering it, you set the same abroad to be sunned for ten dayes, & soke your seeds for other eight dayes in that water, which after the minde of Democritus sowe in your beds: and after the young plants of those seedes be spring vp, they will not onely drie cattle and other small beastes from the eating of them. But further of those helpes shall be taught in that Chapter, where we write of the diuers remedies against sundry beastes, worms, flies, and such like, that commonly annoy gardens.

A phisicke experiment of Democritus that after the plants become vp, they shall not be harmed of beastes nor of any creeping things.

Certaine speciall times to be noted and obserued, either for their aide & fauour to be chosen: or for their annoyauce and incommodie to be eschewed for sowing, planting, or grafting.

Chap. II.

The more of valure our stufte and labour thereabout is, the more circumspect wee ought to bee, and the more aide the reio we may get. or the greater danger therein wee may auoide, the more carefull euery wise man will be.

And the dayly experience is our schoolemaister to instruct vs how much it preuaileth or hindreth. for seedes to be sown, plants to be set, or yennies to be grafted in this or that time, hauing respect not onely to the time of the yeare, as the Sun altereth it, but also to the encrease or wane of the Moone, to the signe the is in, and to the places of heauen above, or vnder the earth, and also to the aspects of other plants, whose beames of light and influence, both quicken, comfort, preserue, & maintaine, or els nip, dry, wither, consume, and destroy by sun drie waies the tender seeds, plants, and grafts, according to their nature, and force naturall or accidentall.

Wherein

Wherein first presupposing the due circumspection of the choice of ground, & other things generally required in this. And therfore according both to the authoritie of the wise and expert Astronomers, as also the wary and prudent experimenters, in either sowing or planting, or other like practise about heales, plants, or trees, haue left vnto vs for our commodity these rules following, that are to be vnderstood and kept in causes of importance, and where occasion may be taken.

When Saturne and the Moone are either three-score degrees off the Zodiacke asunder, (which difference is called a fertile aspect, thus commonly marked \star) or when they are asunder, 126. degrees, which is called a triangle, Trigon, or Trient aspect, then is it good to labour the earth, for either sowing, tilling, gardning, vining, or building.

But when they are a quarter of the Zodiack asunder, called a quartile aspect, which is 90. degrees, then meddle not in such matters, For when they are in places opposite one to another, as if the one be in Aries, and the other in like number of degrees in Libra, and so of Taurus and Scorpio &c.

The full Moons are not good for that purpose, speaking generally as we now doe: the Moone being neere the Dragons taile, is not good, but neere the dragons head is good. All other things be presupposed equall: and most briefly for this little treatise to knit vp other obseruations depending of the moones places only, consider these following.

The Moone being between the 28. degree of Taurus, and the eleuenth of Gemini, sowe. And the moone being betwene the 28 of Gemini, and the first of Cancer, sowe not. And from the first of Cancer, vnto the 19. of the same, sowe and plow. And from the 28. of Leo, vnto φ 21. of Virgo, sowe and plant. And from thence vnto the 24. of Virgo, build, sowe and plant: and from the 24. of Virgo vnto the 19. of Libra, sowe & plow, and from thence vnto the 19. sowe and plant. And from the 6. of Capricornus, vnto the 19 of Capricornus sowe. And from the 24. of Pisces, vnto the 7. of Aries, sowe. Besides all these, you may by your naturall reason, easily finde this rule of the olde

olde wryters to be well noted to vs, that either in a verry moystie ground, or else the seedes you sowe, be seedes of great moysture, that then you shall commodiously choose the end of the Moones wane, when she is verry neare her change, but if either your ground be of the driest, or your seedes: the Moone wering and toward the full, is fittest, as Plinie witnesseth.

And the more of these you can finde at your time of concurring, the better it is: as in good ground well dressed, in due season of the yeare, in due time of the Moones age, in due time of her place, in the Zodiacke, in due aspect of Saturne, well placed in the sight of Heauen &c. And vnles your stuffe be good, all this preuaileth not. And besides that, the common Almanackes vpon perticuler aspects incident for the time, doe now and then exactly warne you of times good to plant in, as commonly when the Moone is in Taurus and Aquarius, or to sowe in, as when she is in Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Libra and Capricornus, or when any of these signes are ascending in the East angle. And when Mars neither regardeth the ascendant, or the Moone, but that he be weekly placed in the scituation of the heauens for that time.

A great many of other rules as concerning the perticuler fauour or hinderance of the heauens, might (and that necessarily) haue bene brought in this place, but neither is it in my purpose, for this present, either to be long in weighing or darke in sence.

And perchance, the most part of the common sort of people will thinke those thinges somewhat aboue their capacitie, yet my conscience bound me somewhat to put such matter into their heades occasioning them thereby (where the dauntines and valew of the seedes or sets so require) to vse the counsell of some such as both may expound them these rules, and giue them ouer alike if need be.

Euen heere you must presuppose all thinges on your part fully and onely first prepared and well appointed, and then to waite for, or take heede to such times as heere are noted, for the working of the Planets therein.

Certaine helps & secrets against haile, lightning, tempests, mistes, rust, frosts and burning heat. Chap. 12.

Seeing the seedes, plants and hearbes sowne and set in the garden, be after in daunger of haile and mistes, and other stormie weather, which greatly discomits the Gardner, or (at the least) such which hope to haue profit and commoditie by the hearbes sowne and set in the Garden: Therefore for the better auoyding of these dangers, the auncient husbandmen and skillfull Gardners haue found out by practice, sundry remedies against such weather.

And first against haile, the ancient husbandmen counsaile to compas the allyes in the garden, about with the white vine. And Philostratus willeth, that when we see the haile neare at hand, then to compas y allies about with the skinnes of the Sea calfe, or els the beast Hiena or the Crocodile, and to hang any of these skinnes also at the entrance or comming in of the garden.

Helpes and secrets, against haile neere at hand.

And the Greekes write, that the garden shall not be harmed by lightnings, if that the same about be conered with the hide of the riuer Horse, named Hippotamon. And Columella writeth, that if you compas the allyes of your garden about with the white Vine, or hang an Oyle in the Garden with the wings abroad, that either of these do defend the garden from lightnings. And sundrie doe plant the Bay tree in diuers places of the garden, as a defence to it against lightnings.

Helps against lightnings.

And Archibius wrote vnto Antiochus King of Siria, and diuers auncient men the like, that if you bury the speckled Tode inclosed in a new earthen pot, in the middle of your Garden, that the same defendeth it from hurtfull weather and tempestes.

Some also hang the Eagles feathers, or the skinne of the Sea Calfe in the middle of the garden, or in the four corners of the same as a proued defence to it against tempestes. And if thicke mistes do harne the garden, then burne heapes of Chaffe, weedes, or shrubbes in sundrie places, for that the smoke

Helps against thicke mistes and frostes.

smoake shall much help this matter. And Diophanes in his rules of husbandry, willeth to gather together dead weedes or such like matter, and burne them on heayes in many places about the garden, but especially in that part which way the winde then bloweth, that it may so carrie the smoake through the Garden: for by that meanes, it is thought to annoyde and put away the euill and harme of the myste which is then present, or at hand.

And when rust is falling on the hearbes, then Beritius in his husbandry instructions, willeth to burne the left horne of an Dre, with Dre dung, and to make a great smoake forthwith round about the garden, but especially that way which the winde then bloweth, whereby all the smoake through the winde, may be so carryed against the violence of the rust falling, which by that meanes shal beare off the noysome occasion of the aire.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you make a smoake with the burning of Creuisles & Dre or goats dung, or chaffe, the same to be a most preient remedie against the rust. And certaine Greeks write, that a garden sowne with beanes, both within and without, they do defend it from being harmed by frosts.

Beritius and Anoralius write, that if you soak the rootes or leaues of either the wilde Cowcumber or Colloquintida brused in water, & sprinkle your hearbes taken with rust, before the rising of the Sun, that the same recouereth them.

And the saide Anoralius writeth, that if you steep your seeds in the water of the rootes of the wilde Cowcumber before you sowe them, that the same defendeth them from all harms of the wormes flies and all other creeping things.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you plant the Bay tree in many places of your garden, that the same putteth alway the harmes of the rust, as hath often bene experienced.

And that burning heate harme not your Garden, which commonly commeth about the Caniculer or Dogge-dayes, Plinie willeth to burne and make a smoak of thre Creuisles about your ground and vnder your Vine, as a good remedie against the same.

Certaine helpes and secrets against the Garden wormes, the greene Flyes, the Canker woormes, the great Moths, the Snayles with shelles and without shelles that harme and gnawe as well the leaues of Trees & Fruits, as the hearbs and young Plants comming vp. Chap. 13.

Garden
grounds har-
med by diuers
injuries.

Heard expel-
ling sometime
of creeping
things out of
Gardens.

Remedies a-
gainst the gar-
den wormes.

AND forasmuch as it is apparant vnto all mens eyes, that the hearbes and young plantes after they bee come vp, be diuerslie in daunger to certaine small Beastes and creeping thinges, liuing aswell vnder the earth as aboue, that cause the plants oftentimes to become weake, if they bee not speedily looked vnto for remedie. And such also is that great increase and abundance of them, that by all meanes possible that can bee deuised either with fire, smoake or Iron, they may not after be vtterly expelled and driuen out of the Garden, being there once lodged in the ground: Wherefore that these annoyances to the Garden, may by diligent industrie of the Gardener be the better destroyed, and that hee may receiue the more commoditie and profit by his Hearbes, flowers and rootes, therefore shall heere bee declared, such speciall remedies as the ancient and late writers haue inuented, and by their diligence practised, vnto the great comfort of the Gardener, and to him that hath delight in a Garden.

And first Africanus, in his learned worke of husbandrie, writeth, that if you smoake the holes of the wormes with drie Dre or Colwdung, that way which the winde then bloweth, that it doth expell them from the eating and gnawing after of your hearbes. And Plinie writeth, that the pure mother or some of the oyle (without the mirture of salt) sprinkled on the wormes, doth also driue them away.

And if the wormes hang to the rootes of the plants or hearbes through the naughtinesse of the dung, then weede the Beds and plants verie diligently.

And Frontius writeth, that the hearbes shall not be harmed of the Garden Flye, if that by a natural meanes you doe plant or sowe in many places amongst your hearbes, the hearbe named Rocket.

And

And Anatolius in his husbandrie instructions writeth, that the garden flies be killed with the sprinkling of sharp Vinegar, mingled with the iuice of Henbane on them. And the like dooth the sodden liqor, or water of the Hearbe named Fleabone, as writeth Pamphilius the Greeke, in which the hearbe named Nigella Romana, hath for a time bene soaked & sprinkled, kill the garden flies.

Remedies against the greene flies of the garden.

And if you will not haue your seedes after the sowing, to be gnawen or eaten of any creeping thinges in the Garden, then befoze the sowing soake your seedes in the iuice of the Hearbe named Sengreene or Houllike, as befoze was taught.

And Anatolius writeth, that the seedes shal not be gnawen if you sowe or set them in the ground, in the shell of a Tortoise.

And Palladius writeth, that your Pot-hearbes shal not engender norysome wormes, or other creeping thinges, if that you drie the seedes befoze the sowing in a Tortoise skinne, or else set the hearbe Pints in many places, and especially among the Coleworxs: as the like as some write, doth a little quantitie of the bitter fitches or tares (sowne amongst) preuaile, especially if the same be sowne amongst the Radishes, and rapes.

Also, the auncient writers will, that the fitches, which bee a graine like to Peason, be sowne in many places among the Pot-hearbes, for a surer defence against all creeping thinges.

And Frontius writeth, that if the Pot-hearbes be sprinkled with the brine made of Goose dung, that the same defendeth hearbes from being gnawen of the Garden wormes, or other creeping thinges.

And now as touching the Caterpillars which the greekes named Palmer wormes, that greatlve annoy and spoyle the hearbes of the Garden: Plinie willeth, that you sprinkle the Plants or trees with bloudy twigs, as a speciall remedy to diue them so away.

Diuers helps and secrets against the caterpillars.

And other auncient writers teach, that if you haue Riuier creuises in many places of the Garden, that the same doth likewise diue away the Caterpillars.

And certaine others will, that you sprinkle the plantes with the dewe of that water, in which the vine ashes haue bene soaked, as a present remedie.

And there be other which will, that about the bodie and armes of the trees, ye kindle and make a smoke of brimstone and vnleaked lime together, is a speciall remedie to drine them away.

And there are certaine other, which first do soften the seeds in that Lie which is drawne and made of the fig ashes, before they solue them in the ground, or rather in the blood of the Caterpillers, or in the iuice of the hearbe named the house-lecke: and some will also, to sprinkle of the fig ashes vpon the Caterpillers.

And certaine rather will, that you solue his hearbe in fashion to a big Onion, and named of the Apothecaries Squilla in the Garden, or hang the same beere and there about the Garden, for a present remedie against the Caterpillers.

And some will, to burne the Toade stooles or Mushrooms, which grow out of the Walnut tree, and be stiffe and hard, that with the strong sauour of them, they may so be destroyed.

And some doe write, that a sauour made of the onely dung of Backes, in many places of the garden will destroy them: And if the Caterpillers be yet with stand these former helps, then vse this practise heere vnder taught: which is, that you take Dre piss, and the mother of Dye, and mix them equally together, after set the same ouer the fier vntill it be hot, and taking the same off, let it coole, which being cold, sprinkle on the potheabes and trees, and the same shall destroy them as Anotolius writeth of experience.

And Palladius writeth, that if you burne small bundles of Barlike blades without heads, making a smoke with them, in the allies and paths of the Garden about, that the same will flea them with the onely sauour.

And certaine Greeke writers will, that you take a few of the Caterpillers in the next Garven or Orchard, and seeth them

them in water with the hearbe Dill, which being colde, sprinkle on the hearbes or trees, and in such places where they be, and the same shall destroy them. But take very diligent heed, that none of this water fall, either on your face or hands.

A practise of the greck husbandmen against the Caterpillers.

And some will, to burne of Galbanum, or the hooues of goats, or the Harts horne, making a smoake in the Garden, which way the winde then bloweth, as a speciall remedie to slea them.

And there be some which will, that you keepe the Tine as theyes in water for thre dayes, and after sprinkle plentifully of the same on your hearbes and trees, as a present remedie to driue away Caterpillers.

A singuler sprinckling stock to driue away the Caterpillers.

And Diophanes the Greeke, writeth, that the Moths which kil the loeks may be destroyed on this wise, if that you take the maw of a weatther sheepe new killed, not washed, but hauiug all the filth hanging thereon, which lightly coner or poulder with earth in that place, where they most swarme in the garden, and after two dayes, you shall finde a maruelous companie of Moths and other flies heaped thereupon, which either carry away, or bury very deepe in that place, that they rise not again. And when you haue thus done but twice or thise together, you shall utterly destroy them for coming any more.

And against snailles, both with shell and without shell, the new mother or some of oyle sprinkled on them, doth greatly preuaile, and the like doth sot of Chimnies scattered on the beds, driue them away.

Helps against snailles.

And Iulius Fronto writeth, that all pot hearbes be greatly holpen and defended from noysome Beastes, if by them the hearb Rocket be either sowne or set.

A sorce for pothearbs out of Iulius Fronto.

Certaine

Certaine helpes and secrets against the Garden Moles, Pismires, Gnats, Flies with long hinder legs, Breeches, Field-Mice, Backes, Serpents, Frogs, and Todes, which gnawe, harme, and destroy, as well the trees and fruits, as other hearbes and floures. Chap. 14.

Why Moles
are a disquiet
and grieve to
Gardeners.

And for that y^e Moles in many places of gardens, through their digging and casting vpp^e, doe leaue bare both the seedes, and yong plantes comming vp, to the vttermoste destruction of the good increase of them, which by that meanes doth not a little disquiet o^r grieve the Gardener, to see his painefull labours so to be subuerted and come vnto ruine, contrarie to his expectation hoped after. And therefore such helpes against their mallice, as either the auncient Greekes, o^r the Latinistes haue wrytten of, shall heere at large be offered.

a proper secret
to driue away
Moles in the
earth.

And first the Greekes write, that the Moles will at no time dig o^r cast vp in the garden, where the hearbe named Tickleweed, otherwise in Latin Palma Christi, doth either grow of their owne accord in that ground, o^r brought otherwise by hap, and there set.

And both Paxamus & Sorion the Greeke, write, that if you take a walnut, and boze a hollow hole, filling the same afterward with Chaffe, Rosen, and Brimstone, and caused to smoake, put the same into the bigger and new^er hole of his comming forth of the earth, stopping diligently all his other holes, and that none of the smoke passe forth, And in such sort leaue that one and bigger hole wide open, that the aire may the better driue the smoke into the earth, which after the Mole feel^eth the sauour thereof, doth either forthwith runne some other way from thence, o^r is found choaked o^r dead in the earth.

An easie practice of the ancient husbandmen in taking of Moles.

And some write, that you may take all the Moles in your garden by an easier manner: If that you get a quick Mole, put the same into a deepe earthen pot, setting the edge to the earth: which Mole, after a while feeling himselfe thus inclosed, will

crye

crie out, and after the other Moles in that ground doe thus heare him cry, they will hastily draw neere vnto him, and minding to help him forth, will so fall into the pot. And now by this same means, if you wil, you may take and destroy all the Moles in your garden.

And some will, to take the roote of the white Pesewort, making the same into fine powder, and after mixing it with barley meale, to worke it together with milke and wine, and after make it vp into little balls, which lay within the holes of the Moles. And Albertus writeth, that if you stop the holes of Moles with either Garlike, Onions, or Leekes, that any of these, doe either force him forthwith to run from that place, or to cast vp a new in some other place.

Diuers special remedies either to kill or driue away moles.

And some will, to bringe vp Cats to runne onely in the Garden, for the better driving of them away. And some also do bring vpp Weesells tame, letting them after runne vppe and downe in the Garden, and to runne into the hoales of the Moles, which through their stincke in hunting after the Moles, doe euen so driue them out of the ground.

A proper hunting and driving away of moles out of the garden.

And some will, to fill the mouth of the hoale with the powder of the red marking stone, or red Dker, mired with the iuice of the wild Cowcumber. And some wil to take Galbanum, and Brimstone, filling a Walnut shell there with and to make a smoake into the hoale, which so driueth them away.

And Palladius writeth, that if you bestrike the lower part of your tree with redde Dker, mixed with Larre, and hang a Jay thereby, that the same doth so gather Bismiers al in one place, that you may after easily destroy them.

And certaine others will, to annoint the stalks of Plants and bodies of trees, with the Dile made of Lupines, or rather with the powder of Lupines, mired with Dile. And sundry write, that they may be destroyed with the onely mother and some of Dile sprinkled on them.

And Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the great heape and swarmes of the Bismiers gathered together, if in

a maruailous
practise agēst
Pismires:

to their heap you put the hart of an Aule: and if the pismires runne and stray abroad in your garden, then strew oʒ list Athes in the allies, and pathes about where they run. And it doeth likewise auaille against their straying abroad, if that you bestrike the pathes about where they runne, either with bright white chalke, oʒ with oyle, as hath beene experienced.

And the saide Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the Pismires, if into their holes you sprinkle of the powder of the Dyanie and Wymstone mixed together, oʒ if you fill and stuffe the holes of the Pismires with the powder made of drie Wyffer-shelles burned, it doth likewise destroy them.

And Paxamus writeth, that if you take of the pismires, and burne of them in the middle of the Garden, that the rest will forsake the ground. And the saide Authoʒ writeth, that if you make a stinke with Rosen before their holes, they will not after come forth, but forsake the place.

Other practi- And he also writeth, that if you compas them with white
ses against the- will, chalke, oʒ red oaker, oʒ else strew round about them
Pismires: the hearbe named Dyanie, but especially those waies where they haue common course: For then neither will the Pismires come neere that plant where it is, noʒ runne by that tree which is bound about the body with this hearb: so much they hate the sauour thereof.

And Palladius writeth, that if you bestrike and annointe the plants and trees with red oaker, tarre, and butter mixed together, that the same driueth them away.

And certaine Greeke writers will, to annoint the plants and trees with the gall of a Bull, the mother of Oyle, and tar tempered together, which so driueth them away. And they also write, that if you poure of the proper dropping of the Poppe mixed with Vineger into their holes, the same doth kill them.

Also some write, that you may destroy the pismires with the onely sauour of the stinke oʒ smoke, of the wilde Cow.

And certain will that if the pismires creep upon your trees to make broad round rings about the bodies and arms of the trees, with white chaulke: so that by twice or thrice, or oftner so doing, you shall cause them to forsake the creeping by any more on those trees.

That pismires
crepe not on
your trees.

And Plinie writeth, that you may destroy the pismires, if that you stop their holes, either with sea mud or with ashes, if they be not wet. And yet the hearbe Heliotropion (which some suppose to be the *Spargold*) by strewing the leaues on the holes, doe chiefly destroy them. And certaine write, that the water, in which the unbaked tiles hath bene soaked poured upon the holes, doth destroy them: and now these instructions against the Pismires shall heere suffice.

A secret of
Pliny for the
killing of
Pismires

And Democritus in his rules of husbandry writeth, that the Gnats which haunt and feed in gardens may be driven away with the onely burning and making of a smoke of the hearbe Calamynce.

Sundry rem-
dies for the
driving away
of Gnats.

And the saide Democritus writeth, that the decoction of the hearb Organy in vinegar, and sprinkled on them, doth likewise drive them away, as hath bene experienced.

And the Gnats also be chased away, if that you steepe the hearbe Rue, or hearbe grace in water, and sprinkle the same on the bees where they haunt: and they be also destroyed and chased away with the smoke made of Galbanum, brimstone and Comin mired together, and likewise chased away with the decoction of the hearbe named Flebane, sprinkled on the beds.

And certaine Greekes write, that the stalkes of Hempe, flouing, doe drive away the swarme, or huge company of Gnattes: and the like dooth the smoaks made of the Dre dung.

A sprinkle
made of the
hemp flouing
so drive away
Gnat :

And Palladius writeth, that the ponder of the roote of Elecampane, mixt with the ashes of horns burned, and the same sprinkled on the beds, doth drive the gnats away: and Pliny writeth that a smoke made onely of the gum named Galbanum, doth drive away the Gnats.

And Byritius the Greekes writeth, that if you sprinkle the

place

Certaine pra-
ctises of the
Greekes a-
gainst the flies
with the long
hinder legs.

place mosse swarming of those flies (with the long hinder legges) the powder of Rose-wort, Opunt, and milke mired together, that the same will either kill them, or drive them quite away, and the same Byrinius writeth, that Alont with the hearbe Organic steeped in milke, and the same sprinkled on the beds and hearbes, letteth them from touching those hearbes after. And the Bayleaves or hearbes beaten to powder, with the roote of the blacke Rose-wort, and tempered either in milke or in water or hony mired together, the same sprinkled on the hearbes, doth either slea them or drive them quite away.

A secret for
the driving a-
way of those
flies.

And certaine Greekes write, that if you burne of those flies in the middle of your Garden, that the savour of them will drive away the rest: and the like doth the wetting of some of them, and after couering them there with wet mud.

Didimus pra-
ctise against
the Breefe.

And Byrinius writeth, that the flies with the long hinder legs will not after touch any of those hearbs which be sprinkled with the water, wherein the Lecke or Centorie hath bene steeped.

And against the Breefes (which bee flies that eat the Corne as it groweth) and doe besides much harme to hearbs, Didimus willeth to sow three graines or cornes of mustard seede, neere to the roote of such a tree, and among the hearbes eaten with them, which so drive them away. And against the field and Garden mice, Apuleus willeth to steepe your seedes before the sowing in an Ore or Cowes gall. And certaine will, to stop their hoales with the leaues of Rhodaphnes, for that when they seeke to come forth and gnaw those leaues, they after die.

Remedies a-
gainst the gar-
den and field
mice.

And certaine Greekes will, to take the Powder made of the wilde Coin-cumber, Venbane Seedes, bitter Almonds, and blacke Rose-wort (of each a like quantitie) and the same so worke together with oyle, which laide or put into the hoales of the Garden or Field mice, drive them speedilie away. And Plinie writeth that the Garden Mice may be driven away, if you sprinkle the beds with the Ashes of the

Wheat,

Waxel, or with that water sprinkled on the beds, in which a Catte hath bin washed. And the seeds also (before the sowing) steeped in the gall of an Oxe, dooth drive them from the eating of the seeds at any time after.

And Florentine writeth, that the Snake or Adder will not lodge or abide in that garden, where either **M**oximwood, **M**ugwort, or **S**othernwood, be aptly planted in the corners, or round about the garden. And if they haunt any Garden, then with the smoake made of the drie Lilly roote, or **H**arts horne, or of the hooues of the **G**oate, they may speedily be driven away. And **D**emocritus writeth, that if you cast the greene **O**ken leauee vpon either the Snake or Adder, that he dieth forthwith: or if any spiteth fasting into their mouth open.

How snakes & adders may be kild.

An Florentine writeth, that neither the Snake no, Adder will come neere that place, where either the fat of a Hart lieth buried, or the roote of a **C**entozie, or the stone of **G**agates or the dung of a **K**ytel yeth.

And you may drive away any venemous creeping thing, if that you take the powder made of **N**igella, **P**elitory, **G**albanum, **H**arts-horne, **B**rimstone, **P**ecendanum, and the hoofs of the goat, miring all these together by equall portions, and wrought together with vinegar: make litle bals of the same, and with the same make a smoke, and it driveethal forthwith to forsake the ground vpon the saour thereof.

how any place may be free from the snake or adder.

And they hate all strong souours, which be either made with **C**arlike or **O**nion blades, and such like: and the flame of fier also, which greatly dimmeth their sight. And the Adders do likewise loue the **S**auine tree, the **J**uie tree, and the **F**enell, as the **W**oades doe the **S**age, and the Snake the hearbe **R**ocket.

Vnder what the adders and snakes loy to be:

And the Snakes and Adders (of all other thinges) do most hate the ash tree, for that they cannot abide the touching of the long shadow in the morning, nor that in the euening but run farre from it. And **P**liny writeth a maruelous matter of the ash tree, for if a snake (saith he) be compassed about with the greene ash tree leaues, and a fier made in the midst, that he

The naturall contrarie of the ash and the snake or adder worthy to be noted.

will

will rather run into the burning fire, then towards the leaues
so much he hateth the ash tree.

Of the Ferne
against snakes
of adders.

And certaine write, that a smoke made of the drie fferne
burned, doeth drive away Snakes and Adders out of that
ground.

How toades
may be driven
away and kil-
led

And Palladius writeth, that the Snake and adders and all
other venemous vermine be driven away with every sharp
and stinking saour fumed abroad.

And the Loads may be driven away and killed (as write
the Greekes and Latines) with those helpes and remedies,
which we haue beore taught, in the remedies against the
snakes and adders, and therefore to recite those againe, were
heere superfluous.

Africanus pra
ctise for the
driving away,
and killing of
the Backes.

And Africanus writeth, that the Backs will not lye by and
downe in that garden, where throught the walles and paths
you hang of the boughes or branches of the Plane tree. And
they be also killed with the onely smoake made of Iuy bran-
ches in the allies about.

And against the chirping of the frogs, which perhaps seems
to disquiet the Gardener in the sommer nights, vse this helpe
and secret written of the Graek Africanus, which willett
to set a bright light before them, or to hang a bright Lan-
terne light on some tree, that the same light may shine vpon
them like the light of the Sunne, which causeth them by the
sight thereof, to cease their chirping, as hath beene tryed by
sundry oftentimes.

Now (gentle reader) I haue heere vttered those special in-
commodities which happen in Gardens, vnto which I haue
adioyned the most proued and true experiences, against those
euils, out of the best Authours, both of the old and new

writers in this Art: least that any (hauing delight
in Gardning) should be frustate of these
helpes. And thus an end of
this first Booke.

(. .)

The second Booke instructeth diuerse manner of sowing, setting, and ordering of the most Pot-herbes, Flowers, &c. with the care and secrets taught, as well for the health of the bodie, as to the pleasure and delight of the eye.



Now that I haue ended my first booke, such as it is: I mind here to enter into the second, In which shall be entreated of the diuerse manner, care, ordering, and diligence to be bestowed, both in the sowing, setting, and remoouing of the most Pot-herbes, sweet smelling herbes, and pleasant flowers, as well for the vse of Physicke, as for pleasure to carrie in the hand, and otherwise to serue the pot, And these, by diligence of the author, gathered out of the treasures of the best wyters of the Greekes and Latines in this art: and experienced by the often practises of sundrie skilfull Gardners in diuers realms and countries, vnto our great vse and commoditie. And such worthy secrets also taught in these matters, as the like hath not beene vttered in the English tongue. And so; that I meane not to seeme long in rehearsal of the benefit of these vnto mans health and delight: I minde therefore (as a number of wyters do) to entreat first of that well knowne herbe, both vnto the Cittie and Countrie, named the Lettuce: whose nature, care, properties, and benefite also to the health, shall after appeare.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lettuce.

Chap. 1

And first the Garden Lettuce (of which we mind here to entreat) doeth delight to be sowne in a fatte and well wrought ground, beeing dunged before, and moyst at the sowing: so; so it appeareth by the fourth day after the sowing.

10

40 The sowing & setting of Hearbes.

so that the seeds be not otherwise burnt, and the ground fruitful.

And it may also be sowne all the yeare throught, if so be the ground be well dunged and dressed, and the seeds often watered, for so they come the faster and plentifuller vp. And seedes which you sow in the harvest may well be remooued and set againe in the moneth of December, and in beddes (if you will) with other hearbes: for so it well abideth the colde winter time, and is also much comforted thereby, for that it may well agree and come vpps with other hearbes, vnto the Seed-time. And to make it spread of breadth in the growing, you must then remooue each from other, when as six leaues be sprung vppe, and set them a good space asunder, whereby they may spread the larger: and the pressing downe of them, must especially be done in warme daies, in lightly cutting the leaues about, and after laying the sharden of Tiles, or tufts of earth to presse them downe.

And least the Lettuce should grow hard, it ought to be often set, and plentifully watered, for by that means the leaues will grow both tender and softer, so that the rootes beore bee streeped and couered with soft dung in the new setting againe.

And both Palladius and Columella write, that if throught the beds, and round about them, be often strewed the riuer or sea Sand, that leaues wil so become white, if the leaues beore be gathered and tyed vppe togeather. And to make the Lettice growe lowe by the ground, and to be thicke and broad in the head, you must then remooue and set them when as they be growne vp an handfull high, and often clippe the tops of the leaues round about, and in the new setting againe scrape faire the rootes of the Lettice, and after dip them in soft and new Cow dung, and set them so in the ground, which after the setting, often and plentifully water, and in the growing vppe alwaies keepe vnder, by clipping the toppes of the leaues, and laying tile sharden on the heades of them, for by that meanes they increase into a breadth, and not to a height.

And they be also made the sweeter in eating, if in the growing they be often remoued and set againe, and that in the setting, as they begin to grow vp in some height, that then the leaues to be tyed vp close together, and being growne a little more in height, then to presse them downe, by laying fileshards or some other things somewhat waightie on them. And to make them pleasant of smell, take and put the seedes within the sweete Citrone seed, and set them so in the ground or else sleepe the seed (for certaine daies) in sweete Rose water: and heere note, that of this, the leaues become the tenderer, if the rootes (before the setting againe bee dipped in new Cow dung (as is aboue saide) and watred often with running water, or for two dayes before the plucking, the leaues close bound together.

The Phisicke helpes.

And now as touching the Phisicke helps of this herb, you shal first vnderstand that the same is cold and temperately moist in the second degree. And *Aegineta* writeth, that the Lettuce dooth manifestly coole and moisten and prouoke sleep: and as it doth nourish like other potherbs, so it doth cause good blood in man.

And yet the often eating rawe of this hearb, doth harme colde stomakes, and causeth dimnes of sight: therefore they ought oftner to be eaten sod then rawe.

But the cholerick, may as safely eat them raw as sodden, and finde commoditie to the body by eating of them raw. And the eating of them while they be yong is more profitable to the stomacke, and encreaseth milke in womens breasts: but when the same is growne to be hard in eating, then it is both drie and bitter, & through his heat then the more opening, and yet doth the eating then engender euill blood, and so causeth harme often to such as eat thereof, as by hindring the sight and corrupting the matter of Sperme. And the eating of them whiles they be yong and tender, doth help an ague, as wel sodden, as being eaten raw.

And sod with vinegar and a litle safron put in the same,

Caner doth help both the stopping of the Liuer and milt, Also eaten raw, or sod, and being mixed with vinegar and sugar, doth open the Liuer and milt, and causeth good blood, and helpeth the tertian ague.

drop sic
m. p. q. l. om And the Lettuce sodden and mixed with oyle Oliue doth heale the drop sic being eaten with meat. And a plaister made of Lettuce, with oyle Oliue, doth mightily assuage hot impostumes. And the seedes eaten of milch women in meat, doth increase milke, and amendeth the sight.

sleep Also the seeds drunk in wine, do procure sleep. And the seeds brused and drunk, do stay the often imaginations of the lust in the sleep, and abate the courage thereof. And it prouoketh sleep, if the seeds be brused and tempered with the milke of a woman childe and the white of an egge, be laide plaister wise on all the forehead and temples. And the powder of the seeds mixt with the milke of a woman child do prouoke and cause sleep. And the like the seeds worke to him which hath an ague, given him to drink with warm water. And the seeds giuen in drinke, do for the most part speedily help the shedding of nature. & he which drinketh the iuce of Lettuce, fasting, shal not be drunk that day.

And the Lettuce plucked vp by the rootes, with the left hand, before the sunne rising, & the same laid vnder the couerings of the bed, the sick body not knowing thereof, doth after cause the person to sleepe. And if fiue leaues, three or one leafe, be laid priuily vnder the bolster of the sick body but in such sort that the leafe or leaues plucked off the next stalk, be laid beneath and vnder his feet, and the leaues plucked off from the top of it be laid vnder his head: they cause sleep as before said: and the often eating of Lettuce, is both dangerous to such womē as be apt to conceiue with child & such as be with child (as ancient men write) for they do not onely cause barrenes, but those which then be with child, shall after be deliuered of children far vnlike their Fathers in that they shal be both raging in minde, & foolish in wit. And therefore the much vse of them, is to be eschewed of such women, euen as they would from a furious dogge or
adder

adder, whose biting they greatly feared. Also the very often eating of Lettuce doth greatly harme such as be short winded, flegmatick persons, & such as spit blood. And although the verie often eating of the raw or sodden Lettuce be no les dangerous then the hearb Hemlock: yet we may often eat of them in the sommer, rather as a medicine then for any nourishment, as both to coole and moisten the stomack. And the eating of them doth make men soluble, in that through the coldnes and moistnes of them, they so coole & temper the excessiue heat of the liuer. And some write, that the eating of Lettuce at night after other meals, doth the better procure sleep that night following.

And as the manner of the preparation of the Lettuce (now in our time) is with vinegar, salt and oyle, wherby to cause a better appetite to the meat, then to be eaten, & both to temper the heat of the blood, and mitigate the heate of the liuer and hart: and yet the often vse of this doth greatly hinder the increase of sperme, as is aboue saide.

These hitherto of the Phisicke helps and properties of the Garden Lettuce.

Of the ordering, care and secrets, both of Endive and Succory.
Chap. 2.

The Endive and Succory haue a like ordering and dressing, sauing that the Endive better abideth the coldnes of winter.

And of this in colde Countreies it may be sowne nere the end of haruest, and it will become white in the growing, if the same be sprinkled with sand, and often watered, and that with great shewers of rayne, if it be after conered and watered, lying on the sand, so that it delighteth in moysture and loose ground.

And after that foure of the leaues be sufficiently sprung vp, then may the same be remooued, and set againe in a well dunged place.

For there be some writers, which will the rootes to be dipt in fresh Cowdung, before the setting againe in the earth.

The Phisicke helps of Endive.

44 The sowing & setting of Hearbes

Endiue cooleth and drieth in the second degree: and the leaues and seeds bee vsed in medicines, but the roote hath no propertie at al in phisicke. And the greene leaues be profitable, but the drie leaues haue no vse in medicines, for that they then worke nothing at all.

wait & leuer And Endiue comforteth the heart, in that it cooleth and delaith the burning therof, against the diseases of the liuer, without harme. in that by nature, it hath such a qualitie and propertie of it self. And against that disease called the kings euill, take the sirrop of the Endiue simply, with the which mix the water of the decoction of Harts tongue, which giue to the patient to drinke, for it is a singuler remedie.

knowe And the iuice of the leaues annointed on burning pushes doth qualifie the heat of them.

impostume And the hearbe bruised and laide plaisterwise on hot impostumes doth mightily helpe.

leuer And the hearbe laid without on the side, doth delay and cease the heat of the liuer.

flour And if the green herbe cannot be had, then aply the seeds laying them brused on such hot griefes, which greatly help. And the Endiue may in like maner be eaten as the Lettuce, as either any way be eaten rawe, or sodden with meat. And the Endiue sodden with vinegar, doth bind the belly. And brused with vinegar, and that laid on the left pap, doth help the Cardiak passion without doubt. And it helpeth the holy fire, hot impostumes, and hot swellings, if the same be bruised and mixed with Ceruse and vinegar, and so laide plaister-wise on such places. And the iuice of it mixt with vinegar and rose water, doth ease the paines of the head coming of heat: and the hearb drunk with wine, doth amend both the default and griefe of the liuer and bladder.

And in the spitting of bloud, and the excesse of Sperme, it helpeth by drinking of it two or three daies together. And all such partes which may be holpen by cooling, may with the iuice of it, the Ceruse and vinegar mixed together, and so annointed on those places, doe greatly auaille.

And the distilled water of Endiue, drunk vnto the quantity

ty of two ounces at a certaine time, and that morning and euening, doth help the straightnes & stopping of the brest.

And in the same maner and quantity drunke, is profitable to women with childe, for that it strengthneth them, and amendeth their senses, and the same water drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of foure or five ounces at a time, doth help the plague, putteth away the kings euill, ceaseth thirst, being more largely drunck of, and qualifieth the burning of the liuer. And it helpeth against the paine of the side, and the pricking which is felt about the hart, if there be drunke three or foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening. These hitherto of the poperties of Endiue.

The Phisicke helps of Succory.

Succory is of a cold and dry quality, and somewhat more then the Endiue, But *Aegineta* writeth, that it cooleth and drieth in the first degree, & hath the qualitie of binding.

And now this hearb sodden with wine, & eaten with meat profiteth the stomack and helpeth digestion, and the flowers bruised with the Roses, and laide plaister-wise vpon the gout, doth forthwith ease the paine thereof. And this plaister laide on the holy fire, doth delay the great heat thereof. And a potion made of the iuice of Succory, Endiue, and the harts tougue, mixed together with sugar, and after boyled with a little water and vinegar together, and if any vse the same oftentimes, it doth help the stopping of the liuer, and milt: so that after the same be taken: the purging pills of Rubarb, & (after that) the same cōforter, which they name the three Sanders, prepared of the Apothecaries, And the iuice of the Succory boyled, doth loose the belly, and helpeth the stomack, the liuer and the kidneis. And it putteth away the pestilent pushes, if linnen cloathes dipped in the water of it, be laide on those pushes. And the hearb brused with the roote, & of the same made flat round cakes, which after being mixed and dissolued in Rose water, annoint any scabbed place there-with, and it will both heale, and make the skinn faire after. And the flowers of Succory, cast a-

mong,

Gout

Gout

Gout

*Puer
&
milt*

gout

scabbed

¶ Among a heape of Pismires or Ants, will soone after become so red as bloud; And the flower of Succory gathered in the morning and after distilled in *Balneo Maria*, doth help diuers diseases of the eyes: as the pinne and web, the mist of the eyes hindering the sight, the vlcers of the eyes, and many other diseases of the eyes. These hitherto of the properties of Succorie.

Of the ordering, care, and secret of the hearbe

Blete. Chap 3.

AND first of the Blete, there be two kinds, the one red or blacke, and the other white: for the red in the growing becommeth so red both in leaues and stalks, as the scarlet in a manner, which after the longer growing, becommeth purple of colour, and in the end into a blacke colour through which the same of some is called the blacke Blete. And the white groweth like to the white beets, both in the stalks and leaues being vnsauourie & biteth very little, or of a small sharpnes: And both kinds do well spring vpin a garden, & that speedily.

And it may be sown in any ground: but rather in a well dressed ground, and after the same be well sprung vp, it needeth not after to be weeded or stoned.

And yet some write, that the Blete loveth in a fat ground, being well turned with dung, for so they say it will best prosper. And when they be sprung vppone vnto their seeding, then they decay not after in that ground, for that they renue yearly through the falling of the seeds: so that if a man would, hee shall scarcely weed them out of the ground, but that they wil continue many yeares after, without any further tranell. And Palladius thinketh it best to be sowne in march, and after it once prospereth (after the sowing or setting) it neuer decayeth, as he writeth.

The Physick helps.

Blete which commonly men eat, is cold and moist in the second degree. And now the same is sometimes eaten with meat, so that it first be sodden in water, & fryed with Oyle and butter, and after that seasoned with salt or vinegar, or veriuice, & then the eating of it in such sort doth little harm,

if the same be not often vsed. For by this experience hath bin noted sūdry times, that the often eating of it (although in such sort prepared) do cause vomiting, paine of the bowels and stomack, and the succoring of choller by fluxe, And a plaister made of it with Oile, and that laid on the place of the milt, doth helpe the greefe thereof, and by eating of this hearbe, as we haue aboue said, it doth loose the belly of propertie, when as the same is become costue or bound, by any clammy matter. These hitherto of the properties of the Blete.

*Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the hearbe
Spinage. Chap. 4.*

Spinage is sowen very well in the moneth of September and October, to serue both in the winter time, and Lent following, in well dunged ground. And the Spinage also may be sowne alone in beds: the ground beeing fat and well turned in with dung. And when the same is well come vpp, then may you cut away the one halfe of the turfs at one time and the other halfe at another time. For so the vertue and commoditie of it will indure a long time.

The Phisicke helps:

Spinage is colde and moist in the end of the first degree, and the same sodden and eaten with meat, doth soften the hardnesse of the belly, and taketh away the paines and griefes both of the breist and lungs.

Also it nourisheth better then doth the Orach as writeth *Sarapian*, for that it doth qualifie choller, cleanse the body, and strengthen the stomake: and the decoction of this hearb drunk, expelleth the euill humors, and causeth easie drawing of breath. Both the often and daily eating of it with meat, doth engender Melancholic, like as the Lettuce doth. And whosoever shall haue greuous paines in the backe, and a costue belly, let them eat of this herb sodden, and drinke, or suppe of the broth, and they shal haue ease and remedy in short time by Gods help.

And

48 The sowing & setting of Hearbes.

And the hearb helpeth the paine of the throte, comming of bloud and red choller. These hitherto of the properties of the Spinage!

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Orach or Arage. Chap. 5.

THe hearbe named Orach or Arage may be sowne from the beginning of the spring, vnto Haruest: that is from February, March, Aprill, and all other moneths following vnto haruest. But some of it is sowne in the moneth of December, in earth well trimmed and duned, and the better it commeth vp, being thin sowne. Also it much delighteth to be often fed with plentie of moisture, and if the season be drie, then in continuall moisture. And the seeds of the Orach may well be kept for foure yeares. But the seeds so soone as they be strewde or sown abroad, must be couered with earth. And the weedes growne among the young plants, must be still an end plucked vp by the rootes: And it requireth not to be remooued, yet the same groweth the better, if it be set thin: and Palladius willeth it to be sowne in Aprill, and to be watered all hot moneths thowoe vnto haruest, for that it ioyeth in continuall moisture.

The phisicke helpes.

The hearbe named Orach or Arage, as writeth *Aegineta* doth moisten in the second degree, and cooleth in the first, of the which cause it softneth the belly, and the seedes do cleanse, through which they profit the stopping of the liuer, and help the Iaundies.

Gout And the Arage bruised and mixed with hony, doth take away the paine of the gout, if the same be laide plaister-wise on the greife.

anulger And *Macer* affirmeth the like, that the hearbe bruised and mixed with sale Niter, honie, and vinegar, and the same layd plaister wise on a hot gout, doth ease the raging paine thereof: and the seedes of the Arage bruised and drunke with water and honie mixed together, doth help the sheading of the gall. Likewise the iuice laide on the holy fire, & on any other inflammation, doth cease & qualifie it. And
inflammation this

this hearb applied vnto the womans priuy place, doth amend the euils within, and ceaseth forth-with the paine of the matrice: and sodden like vnto another pot hearb and so eaten, doth loose the costiuenes of the belly, proceeding of heate, and aswageth diuers swellings. And the hearb laid plaister wise on any member harmed either with thorne, splenter of wood, or naile, doth after drawe out the same without paine, and healeth the wound. And this hearb boyled with hony, and layd on rough nailes of the fingers, doth after loose them without paine: and the seeds often drunke doth expel wormes, & prouoketh vomiting. And the hearb eaten do help such as haue a hot lyuer. And if any eateth the hearb Mercury and Arage, sodden together like portage: the often eating of this portage, doth loose the belly, & take away the pinching paine of the bladder. And if any often vse to eat of Arage, herb Mercury, & the Beetes sodden together, he shall be deliuered of the ague in short time after.

These hitherto of the hearb Arage.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Beetes. Chap. 6.

Beetes desire a fat earth, for so they best toy: and the same which is eaten with meat, may be sowne in the months of December, January, February and March, yea and all the yeare through (in a manner) it may be sowne, if the ground befoze be well dressed, and turned in with dung. And when they become vp thicke together, then may they be remoued and set thinner a sunder, but rather they ought then to be remoued, when as four or fve leaues be sprung vp, and at the setting againe be dipped in new colwdung, for by that meanes they growe white. And they delight also to be often remoued and digged about, for so they prosper the better: and a man may sow them in that ground where mellons, citrons or gourds be, and when they be a little come vp, then to weed them often, that they may appeare to growe alone. And those Beetes which be sowne for seedes, be aptest sowne in the moneth of August, and remoued after the moneth of Januarie, in the furrowes or lowe places of the garden: for so they

50 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

they bring forth the better seedes. And note that the Beetes bring forth no seeds of any value in the first yeare, but better in the second yeare, and best in the third yeare, which then ought to be reserved either to eate or otherwise. And these seeds endure for foure yeares in good effect.

The Physick helps.

Beetes are colde & moist in the third degree, and engendreth good blood, and the white hath the propertie to purifie and cleanse all the euill humours of the body. And the head washed with the water in which the white Beetes are sodden, doth cleanse the head of the Dandrie, or that like to branne on the head: and the often eating of this hearb is not good, for that it increaseth euill humors aswel in healthful as sicke persons: and the hearb is better commended sodden then rawe for the stomacke. And sodden with mustardseed doth helpe the disease of the splenet: and the iuce of it doth qualifie the holy fire. And the root of the Beet sodden, if of the same be dropped 3. or 4. drops hot into the eares, doth help the paine of them. And the iuce of the Beete taken with the seeds of Commin or Dill, doth after put away the gripings of the belly, & the iuce drawn vp by the nose with the oyle of bitter Almonds, doth purge the head: and the iuce rubbed on the gummes, doth cease the raging paine of the teeth. And this herb profiteth by medicine, for it nourisheth little, and by much eating of it, it doth gnaw and torment the stomack. The Beete groweth broad, if before it be growne vp with a stalke there be laide some broad slate-stone or tyle to make it grow into a breadth, through the waight layd on it. These hitherto of the properties of Beets.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of Coleworts. Chap. 7

The Coleworts come vp in euery ayre, and may be sowne or remoued all the yeare through, in which time the ground shall not be frozen or so much dyed, that it cannot be digged or pressed. And these seedes also continue and may be kept for foure yeres, and they also loy in a mean fat ground, dugged

dunged and digged: But it abhorreth the stiffe clay and grauelly ground, and refuseth also the chalkie and sandy ground: And it sogeth in dung laid about the roote, and commeth well forward by weeding, and the stronger it wereth, if it be well couered about with earth. And it delighteth both colde and raynie Countries, And when six leaues be come vp, then may it be remoued, but you must bestrike the roote before with soft Colu-dang: and you may remoue it twice, when as it is in the greatest leaues, which so causeth it to growe the bigger and to yeeld the more seedes. And if you can, let the same be done in a warme day if it be in the Winter time, and toward the euening if you do the same in the Sommer.

And those also which be sowne in December, February, March, Aprill and May, may serue all the sommer and winter, untill they are killed by long frosts and ouer much colde, And not only the yong Coleworts set in March or Aprill, but also those which are set in June, July and August, shall be in winter great, so that they be set alone where nothing els is, and that in the growing the heades or tops of the leaues be often clipped and cut off, which so letteth their growing into height, and maketh them growe into a broadnes and thicknes in the head. And the thinner they be set, the bigger they will be: and therefore they must be set three foote asunder.

Also take heed that you couer the Coleworts well about with earth in the setting, for by lying bare of the earth, the plant soone after dyeth.

And now all these before written, both in the ordering, dressing, and nature of it, may likewise be understood of the Cabadge to be ordered and used.

The Phisicke helpes.

Coleworts be colde and moist in the second degree, although of *Auicenn* thought to be cold and drie. And now against the hardnes of making water, take of Colewortes, which put into scalding water, and boyling them a litle, so that they be halfe rawe, and after powring the water almost cleane from them, vnto which put a litle oyle, salte,

*Sufficient for
of dressing*

52 The sowing & setting of hearbs

and commin, and after heat the same together a little more, and when this broth is somewhat cold, then sup of the same and eate likewise of the Cole-worts so soone as it hath first foddren, and this dayly do vntill you be thoroughly holpen.

And against al swellings and all vlcers, bruse Coleworts which haue but yong & tender stalks and leaues, those lay plaister-wise on cankers, and it wil both purge and heale them, which no other medicine of propercie doth, and yet before the same be laid on, the caker must be washed with warme water twice a day, & the same yong Coleworts brused and laid on twice a day. And with the same remedie also may be holpen loofe and brused places, and both vlcers and cankers on the pappes, and if the same be often applied and vsed as is aboue saide: and if the vlcer be such that it cannot abide the sharpnes therof, then may it be mingled with barley meale and so laid plaisterwise on. And the raw Colewort eaten with the hearb grace or Rue, and the hearb Coliander shred together, or a little salt and barley meale with Oximell mixed together, and with all to annoint the greeued place, doth heale the gowt, and helpe the ache of the ioyns in short time.

And for deafenes of the eares, bruse the same hearbs with wine, and the iuce pressed out, drop warme into the eare, & the patient shal finde ease shortly after. And the Colewort foddren in pleasant wine, and that drunk, bringeth downe the tearmes in women.

And the iuce of the same herb mixed with the purest honny, doth help certaine paines of the eies, if the same be dropped in the corners of them. And the iuce drunk for 40 daies with white wine, doth cure both the jaundice & the discaise of the milt, as hath bene experienced. And three partes of the iuce of this hearb, and two partes of alo m infused in vinegar and mixed together, doth heale both the foule scuruiues and leapry by annointing thereupon.

And the iuce of the Colewortes mixed with the meale of Fenigreeke and Vineger, and that laid plaister-wise or annoynted on the gowte, aches of the ioyns and filthy vlcers

ulcers, doth ease, cleanse, and heale them.

And the iuice also drawne vp by the nose, doth purge the head, And the iuce of the Colewort drunk with wine, doth helpe the bite of an Adder or Snake: and the iuice drunke with red wine, doth help the cough: & the iuice taken with oyle, and holden a good while in the mouth, doth heale the blistering thereof. And the leaues of the Colewort eaten raw, do make a person sleep well without dreaming: and the green stalks and root of the Colwort roasted vnder the hot imbers, and tempered with olde barrowes greace (the same applied in plaister forme) doth heale the continuall paines and stiches in the sides. *Cough*

And eaten raw with vinegar, it doth helpe the diseased with the Splene, if the same be often vsed.

And *Auicenn* writeth, that eaten alone it doth engender troubled bloud, and melanchollie, and his nourishment is small, but the more and tenderer it is sodden with fat flesh, or Hens flesh, the better and wholsomer it is to be eaten.

And the first broth of this hearb eaten, doth soften the belly, and prouoketh vrine, but the eating of the substance, doth binde the belly. And if you will make drie a moyst bellie, then after the hearbe hath boyled a while, and that the first water be poured forth, pour in quickly the other seething water, and so boyle it new againe, vntill it become very soft and tender, and then eate of the substance thereof, seasoned with pepper and salt, and so it bindeth the belly. But in eating the broth and substance together, it then worketh temperately, for the broth of the first seething Colewort eaten alone, doth loose the belly, and the substance tenderly sodden and eaten, doth binde the belly. And by this appeareth, that the broth of the first seething of this hearb, doth loose the belly, and the broth of the latter seething doth binde the belly.

And *Plinie* writeth, that the leaues of the Colewortes bruised, and laid plaister-wise, do marueilously heale the woundes of Dogges: and the Colewort tenderly sodden, and giuen to young children to eate, doth cause them the

The sowing & setting of hearbs

sooner to goe on foote: and if you will drinke much at a feast or banquet, and not to be drunke (and to suppe well and freshly at the supper after) then eate before your going to supper, raw Colewort leaues with vineger, so much as you wil, and after you haue supped, then eate again four or five raw leaues, and they wil after make you so fresh & hungry, as though you had neither drunk nor eaten any thing at your supper before.

By this meanes you may drinke so much wine as you list, and not be overcome or drunke with Wine: yea, & make great wagers vpon the same. And if any droppeth certaine droppes of wine into Coleworts, boyling fast on the fire, it forth with ceaseth (from boyling any more) and changeth the colour, euen as a dead thing in it selfe. These hitherto of the properties of the Coleworts.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Land Cresses. Chap. 8

The Land Cresses, is an hearbe which the Germanes do vse in their Sallets, but it may not be eaten without cooling hearbes, like as the Lettuce, Sorrell and Purcelain, which do so temper the fiery vertues, as Galen writeth. And now the Land Cresses may be sown with Lettuce, for it so ioyeth and commeth vp the better, and doth also delight in the often watring, and in a shadowie place, where the Sun doth shine little vpon, and hateth the dung. And Palladius willet it to be sown in the moneth of Ianuarie.

The Phisicke helpes.

Land Cresses, as writeth *Plantearius*, is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and the seeds do especially serue vnto the vse of medicine, and may well be kept for five yeares. And the greene hearb also is of great effect, beeing dried somewhat before the ministring of it: and now the seedes haue the properties of heating and drying vp superfluous humours, and worketh in a manner so much as doth the Mustard seed: and also the seedes bruised and drunken in wine doth expell the dead yongling: and drunke with Vineger, it deliuereth the swelling of the Splene, and eaten with the best

best Honie, they do help the cough, and open the breast: and the seedes chewed, and holden in the mouth, do helpe the Palsie of the tongue.

And the Cresses may not be eaten alone, as we haue aboue-
said, for that it diminisheth mans strength, and engendreth
euill humours. Further, the seedes do stay the distilling or
running of the head without harme, if they be taken whole,
and the pouder of the seedes drawne vp by the nose, do
purge the braine, and help the paines of the head: and the
seeds help the palsie, if they be sodden in wine in a litle lin-
nen bag, laid so hot to the palsie place as may be suffered. &
in the litharge or sleeping out of measure, let a sneeze be
made of the pouder of the seedes, and blowne vp: and a-
gainst the paine of the hippe, & paines of the chollicke pro-
ceeding of colde, boyle the seeds in a bag of wine, and lay
that hot vnto the greened place: and the like disease and
the strangurie, the green hearbe sodden in wine and oyle
together, and the same laid hot on the belly. And the hearb
drunk with mints in wine, doth drive forth both the long
and flat wormes in beastes.

And against the hardnesse of fetching of breath, and the
cough, seeth the seeds of Organy in pleasant wine. And the
iuce of the hearb annointed, doth stay the sneading of the
haire of the head: and the iuce of the hearb dropped in the
eare, doth helpe the ache and paine in the teeth. And the
often eating of this hearbe in Sallets, doth giue a sharpnes
and readinesse of wit. These hether to of the propertie of the
Land Cresses.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Parcelly.

Chap. 9

The parcelly seed being new, is long before the appearance
aboue the earth, for that it appeareth not in forty or fifty
daies after the sowing, as writeth Plinie: But yet the olde
seedes doe sooner come vp. And now where the seedes bee
sown, they doe plentifullye come vp, and thicke together,
and after they once prosper in that ground, they sildome de-
cay, but continuallye renew and increase in more plenty. And
the

56 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

the seeds also prosper, being sowne so well in cold, as hot places, and in what earth you list, as writeth Palladius. And yet it togeth to be continually watered, for that by the watering, it wareth the stronger, and cometh vp the faster, and regardeth no aire nor ground: and the seeds as writeth Columella, may be sowne neere to ditches, or running waters, or welles: and if you wil haue it grow big, and haue large leaues, then as Florentius writeth take so many seeds of the parcels as you can well hold between thre of your fingers, and tie them together in a thin linnen cloth, which after set in dung and earth mingled together, and that put into a shallow hole, and it will after grow vp big and brode of leafe. And it will also grow of a marueylous bignes, if after it be come vp, you dig vp the earth round about it, and strew the chaffe of coyne about the roote, and water the same often.

And if you will haue the leaues of the parcels to grow crisped, then befoze the sowing of them, stusse a Venice ball with the seedes, and beat the same well against the ground, whereby the seedes may so be a little brused, and then sowe them in the ground: or when the parcels is well come vp, goe ouer the bed with a waighly roller, whereby it may so presse the leaues down, or else tread the same downe with thy feet.

And Palladius writeth, that the male of this hearbe hath the blacker leaues, and shorter roote, but the female hearbe hath more crisped and harder leaues, a bigger stalke, and is sharpe and hot in taste. And Palladius also willeth, the seede of this hearbe to bee sowne in the Monethes of Februarie, March, Appill, May, and that thicke together, and to be often watered.

The Phisicke helps.

Parcely of the Garden, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third, & this parcely hath the propertie of piercing, and prouoketh vrine: and both the seedes and root preuaile against the stone. Also take the root of the parcely, which being drie, bruiſe wel, & after drinke the same with pure wine, and it wil cause a good braine, and good memorie,

rie, and purge the blood. And the same drinke bringeth downe the tearmes of women: and the seeds eaten do take away the swelling of the stomacke, helps the dropisie, dry and pierce the euil humours, and consume them. Also they cleanse the Liuer, and put away the paines of the loynes and bladder.

And a sallet made of Parcely, Sorrell, and vineger mixed together, doth help the burning of the *ague*. And the herb giuen either raw or sodden to eate, doth help the stopping of the bladder, prouoketh vrine, cleanseth the kidnies, and draweth downe the tearmes, loseth the winde of the body, taketh away the gripings of the belly, & helpeth the swelling of the stomacke: note, the seedes be principall, the root next, and the leaues be the third in working.

And the Parcely laide in plaister-forme with bread, on that sore called the holy fire, doth heale the same. And aswel the leaues as rootes sodden, do help the straightnes of making water, and the disease of the kidneis. And *Plinie* writeth, that the seeds brused, & annointed with the white of an egge on the reines, or sodden in water and so drunk, doth help the disease of the kidneis. And the seedes giuen in white wine doth help the iaundise.

And neither women in childe-bed nor milch nurses, nor women with childe, may eat Parcely with their meats, for feare of hindring of conception, drying vp the milke in the brestes, and causing the yongling to haue the falling sicknesse.

And Parcely throwen into Fish-ponds, doth reuiue and strengthen the sicke fish.

And the chawing of the fresh and greene Parcely, doth cause one to haue a sweet smelling breth, or doth greatly amend a foule stinking breath, & therefore especially is this hearb very commendable for women as haue strong and stinking breaths, both to chawe and cary about them, that the strong sauour and sinell of their breath may so be abated, and also to yeld forth a sweet breath. These hitherto of the properties of Parcely.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets, of Sperage. Chap. 10.

The Sperage (after the minde of the learned Greekes) ought to be sown in fat and well dunged ground, in the spring time, and so many seedes sown together, as you may take vp with three of your fingers, and that each be set in little furrowes straight out and lightly covered with earth.

And Didinus writeth, that the Sperages soy in fat and moyste ground, and well turned in with dung, and to be sown in the spring time in furrowes three fingers long, and that there be sown two or three graines together, and that halfe a foote a sunder: and that there need no other diligence and care in the first yeare, but onely to rake and digge vp the weedes cleane from them. And after forty dayes, the small rootes will be so folded and tyed one to another, that they wil seeme to be fastned and ioyned together in one, and this is named of the ancient Gardener, a Spunge.

And if the places shall be drye, in which you purpose to sow the seedes, then keepe the seeds in soft Cowdung laid in the bottome of furrowes, euen as though they lay in dishes, And in very moyst places the seed ought to be sown, from the top of the sile or ridge of the bed, that the raine may so lightly slide off, and not water so much in the falling off. And when the seeds be thus sown, then the Sperages which growe vp in the first yeare, ought to be broken off or cut away somewhat high, least by breaking off to neere the earth, (the young rootes being yet tender) you plucke vp the whole Spunge withall. And it must continue growing in one place for two yeares, and be nourished with continuall dunging and often weeding.

And in the third, and other yeares after, the Sperage may so open the eyes of his branching: for vnles it be thus wrought, the stems broken off will increase the eyes of the Spunge, in such sorte, that the same will become as blinded, not suffering any Sperage after to shoote and spring forth. And that shall you keepe, out of which you haue gathered your seeds,
and

and set the Sponges in the winter, in ashes and dung tempered together.

And there is another manner of setting the Sperages by Sponges, which after two yeares growth ought to be removed and set againe into some open and well dunged place: and that the furrowes be made a foote distant a sunder, and not about nine fingers deepe, in which set the Sponges, that the earth lightly couered on them, they may easily spring vp.

And in the spring time when they begin to shoote vp and shoue aboue the ground, then with an yron-forked dibbill, the earth round about must be rayed, that the shootes appearing, may the easilier come vp, and the root loosd in the earth may growe the bigger, and after the growing vp, to be in such sort weeded that the rootes be not weakened or to much loosd in the earth.

And all the winter throughe, the yong plantes of the Sperage must be couered ouer with a thicke and warme couer of strawe, whereby to defend them from the sharpe frostes that might otherwise destroy them. And when the spring is come, and that they be further appeered, then to batten them with dung.

The phisicke helpes.

Sperage doth heat and moylen, and therefore helpeth the palse, the Kings euill & the strangurie. And the fruite and seeds be vsed in medicine, and indureth four yeares in full strength.

And the Sperage eaten with meate, doth help the stoppinge of the liuer and hardnes of the milt. And the roote sodden in wine, and drinking often thereof, doth help the shedding of the gall without doubt. And if the mouth be washed with the decoction of the Sperage, it ceaseth all the paines both of the mouth and teeth. And profitable is the Sperage to be eaten for the stomack: and ioyned with com-
Stomach
 mine seedes, they put away the swellings of the stomacke and passion of the Collick.

And the eating of them do amend the sight, soften gently the belly, & purge the brest, the bowells and the raynes.

and maketh a very good sauer in all the body, but the vrine then stinketh: and being sod in wine & the same drunk, doth help the paines, both of the kidneis and loynes. And the roote drunke in white wine, doth ease the paine of the stone.

And certain others doe affirme, the same profitable for women to drinke with white wine, for the greefe of their priuy place. And the root sodden in vineger, doth help the swelling and foule spots of the skin, like vnto the leaprie.

These hitherto of the properties of the Sperrage.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Sauery. Chap. 11.

Sauery may be sowne in rough and leane ground, in February and December, either alone or mixt among other hearbes. And this hearbe may be set in borders, either in slips or in roots, and is much vsed also in meates and broths and therfore it may ill be spared out of the garden.

The Phisicke helps.

Sauery in qualitie is hot and drye in the second degree, and this hearbe eaten with creame, doth amend a coldestomack by purging it: and if any drinketh of this herb, it helpeth and defendeth him from falling into a sound, & taken in wine, it helpeth the stopping and other defaultes of the liuer, the milt, and the lungs, and cleanseth all womens priue places: but women with childe must refrain both drinking and smelling vnto this hearb. And being sod in wine and laid on the palsie members, doth remoue the greefe and pain of them: and the herb brused and laid plaster-wise on the belly (as the second *Plinie* writeth) doth expell or send forth the dead yongling, and prouoketh vrine: and being drunk in wine, it doth mightily quicken such as be molested with the sleeping downeright, so that their heads be often bathed with vineger: And the stomacke mooued often to vomitte, either the powder taken in an egge, or the hearbe drunke in wine doth stay the same. And the hearbe drunk, doth preuaile against the stinges of all venomous beastes.

And *Dioscorides* telleth, that the vse of the Sauery in meates

meates, doth long preferue the bodie in health. And *Albun-
macer* also writeth, that the propertie of this hearb is, to expel and put away windines, and both the swellings and gripings of the body, & helpeth digestion. Likewise it expelleth the superfluities of the stomacke, prouoketh vrine, and the monthly tearmes, and sharpnes, besides the weakenes of the sight proceeded of euill moisture. These hitherto of the properties of Sauery.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of running

Time. Chap. 12

The running Time of the Garden, delighteth to be set either in the slippes, or sownen in the seeds, vnder the shadowe of some hedge, or els to be set in beddes, on the edge of some pond or ditch, or pit of water, soz so it prospereth and springeth the faster, and runneth out at length.

The Phisicke helpes.

The running Time is both hot and drie in the second degree, & doth so much heate, that it both prouoketh the monthly termes, and the vrine, and is also very sharp to taste. Which running Time doth stay the distillings of the head proceeding of a cold stomacke by drinking therof in wine and also doth draw down the termes of women, & prouoketh vrine, & helpeth also the biting of venemous beasts: and it ceaseth the head-ache, by boyling the hearb in Rose-water, & so applying it to the head, and especially the frenzie persons, and such which be moued to sleepe much, by the mixing of vineger to it, and applying the same also vnto the head: and the drinking of two drams waight of the iuce in vineger, doe stay the bloody vomittings. And the drinking of the seeds in wine, doth mightilie prouoke the vrine and expell the stone: and who that daily drinketh of the hearbe in wine, doth breake the stone of the bladder and kidneis. And the hearb healeth the sting of a Bee, if the same be laid vpon it: and being sodden in wine, with the iuce of sweet Licoras, doth help both the cough, and purgeth the breast: and sodden in wine with Annis seedes, doth heate the stomacke, putteth away the wind of the guts, and helpeth

the hearbe
 peth the strangurie. And this hearbe sodden with vineger
 and honie, and drinking thereof vnto the quantity of a cup
 full at a time, dooth helpe the spitting of bloud. And the
 iuce also mixed with vineger, and drinking therof vnto the
 quantity of foure drams at a time, doth the like aboue said;
 and the same sodden with wine and honie, if the same be
 applied to hot, in plaster-forme, doth helpe the disease cal-
 led the Squince: and sodden in wine and drunke, doth o-
 pen the stoppings of the Liuer and milt, and prouoketh v-
 rine: And the distilling water of the running Time, drunk
 vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, both morning
 and euening, doth strengthen and amend the head, the
 braine, and the stomack, and prouoketh the appetite vnto
 meat, putteth away the noise & rumbling of the belly, loos-
 neth the hardnes of the stomacke, and prouoketh vrine: and
 the water in the same maner drunk, doth comfort the sight
 consumeth the humors & distillations of the head, and hea-
 leth also the one daie ague (or otherwise the Quotidian)
 mixed with wormwood water, and so drunk.

And the drinking of the same water, vnto the quantitie
 of three ounces at a time, doth amend and helpe a colde li-
 uer, milt, and the guts vlceraed. And the water doth open
 the stopping, both of the Nosethrills and ears, restoreth the
 hearing, helpeth the giddines of the head, stayeth from vo-
 miting, putteth away the gripings of the belly, and bowels:
 also it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine by the drin-
 king thereof; and to conclude, it healeth brused members,
 by applying often linnen clothes dipped in water. These
 hitherto of the properties of running Time.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lombardie

Louage. Chap. 13.

This Hearbe named the Lombardie Louage, togeth to
 be sown in a well digged and dressed ground, but espe-
 cially neere vnto a thicke hedge or wall, for that it so greatly
 delighteth, and best prospereth by growing in the shadowe,
 and neere vnto some running water: and in such soote sown,
 it will come vp in any ground.

The phisicke helps.

Louage is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seeds may well be kept for three yeares, And now if any drinke the seeds fasting in the morning, they after purgethat person, both vppward and down-ward: and the seeds giuen in glister, do ease that person pained with the gout in his feet. And the seeds steeped for a night in wine, and after drunk, doe send downe womens tearmes: and yet note, that these seeds be ouer strong in working (taken inwardly) in that they breake vlcers, & open impostumes, being laid plaister wise vppon, and doth in a forcible maner expell the dead yongling. And therefore the force of these seeds in the ministring ought to be tempered and mixed with the seeds of fenell & Annis, in a like waight of ech to the Louage, for in such sort taken inward, it neuer harmeth any person, & in aplying of the seeds, without the body there needeth no other thing to be added to them: and the hearb much profiteth in a bath, if a body be rubbed with them, for so it doth open the powers, & draweth forth euil humors in bathing: & the seeds soddē either in wine or water, & drūk, do open the stopping of the liuer and milt: and the seeds mixed with comin seeds, & brused togither, & drunk in wine, doth profit much, for that they amēd the stomack, and put away the windines of the belly. And the seeds brused and sodden in wine, with Galingale and Sinamon, doth amend and helpe the paines and griefes both of the stomack, milt, & bowels. And the Tyzan made of the seeds, sinamon, Rapoportike, & Galingale with sugar, and the same taken in wine, do cease the paine of the belly, put away the swelling both of the stomack and bowells, helpeth the biting of snakes, & adders and prouoketh vrine, & sending down of the termes. And a bath made of this hearb and Sage, Rosemary, Mugwoort, Calamint, Camomil, Mellilote, sticados, & Fenegreeca, and these sodden in wine togither, do help the crampe, proceeding of the fulnes of the body, the pallsie, the paine of the gout, & the kings euill: & the distilled water drunk, to the quantity of 2. or 3, ounces at a time, helpeth the gripings
of

64 The sowing & setting of hearbes.

of the sides and stomacke, the grieve of the stone, kidneis & bladder: amendeth the horcenes of speech, & aswageth the dangerous swelling of the throte, called the Squince. And to conclude, this water maketh the face both faire & cleare if it be daily washed (both morning & euening) therewith. These hicherto of the properties of Lumbardy Louage.

Of the ordering, and care of the greater or Garden Mallowes, Chap. 14

The greater, or Garden Mallowes, which beareth flowers from Sommer vnto Winter, as well of the white as red, is like in beautie vnto the rose, although not so strong of sauour, and sweete of smell, which the women in our time vse to decke their houses and windowes with. And now these Mallowes, as Collumella writeth, ioyeth to be in a fat ground, and hauing moyst dung lying about it, and that it be remooued, when as sower leaues be well sprung vp. And this hearb the Romans in ancient time vsed to eate in their Sallets and Postage, in stead of other hearbes. And the floure also of this hearbe (as writeth Columella) doth both open at the full appearance of the Sunne, and shutteth again at the setting of the Sunne. And to conclude, Palladius willeth the seedes of this hearbe to be sowne in the month of February.

The Phisicke helps.

Garden Mallowes are moist, like to the other kindes of Mallowes, and may very wel be applied, as well to the outward as inward griefes. And the hearb, roote, or seedes either sodden in milke or wine, and drunk, doe cease a hot & dry cough, heale the lungs blistered, and is a singular remedie against the Tisicke. And the Garden mallowes sodden either in wine or water, and mixed with honic and Allome, and the same holden and garguled for a little season in the mouth, doth both heale the blisterings of the mouth and throte, and other stinking sores. And the mallowes sodden and eaten, doth loose the belly: and the same also preuaileth in Agues, vnto such as be then bound in body. And of the same decoction, may be made a glister to loose the bellie.

And

And the distilled water of the Roses or flowers of the great mallows, doth (of experiēce) heale the breakings out of the mouth, and preuaileth against al outward & inward heats, and healeth also the holy fire & blisters of the throte, and all other swellings, if it be gargalled in the mouth and throte, and otherwise applyed without by fine linnen clothes dipped in the same. These hitherto of the properties of the greater Garden mallows.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Fennell. Chap. 15.

Fennell (after the minde of later writers) ought to be sown in the beginning of the Spring, which with vs is counted in the end of February, and that in sunny places and somewhat stony. But after the minde of ancient writers, it may be sown in the month of December, Januarie, and February: and at any time the same may be remooued. And now in our time, the great leaues of Fennell be strewed vnder cakes and bread set in the ouen, to giue a sweeter tast and saour vnto the crust. Also the green leaues be stuf in Sea-fish, to take away their sea saour and smell in eating, which the daintie can scarcely abide.

The Phisicke helpes.

Fennel is hot and drie in the second degree: but *Agineta* writeth, that Fennell doth heat in the third degree, and dryeth in the first, Also the seeds, hearb, rinde and roote, be applyed in medicines: The seeds ought to be gathered in the beginning of September, & may be kept three yeares. Also seeth the Fennel, and when you cannot get the herb vse the seeds, which boyle in faire running or conduit water, after drink a good glasse full of the same euery day, and it taketh away the vnnatural heat, & causeth a cleere sight. And the whole root of the Fennel may be plucked vp in the beginning of May & kept for three yeares. Further, if any would put away the red spots of the face, which do present a kinde of leaprie, let him take the Fenel finely brused, & mix the same with old barrowes greace, and beate them a little together, which so done, annoint lightly the face with that

oyntment, which after doth make the face to be seemly againe, and taketh the spots quite away, And the female eaten of women (doth of propertie) increase the milk in their breasts. And the seeds eaten, do prouoke vrine, send downe the tearmes, and helpeth the stopping and hardnes of the liuer and milt, and the shedding of vrine. And the iuce of the Fennel mixed with warme milke & the same given to drink vnto yong babes or sucking children, helpeth the hardnes of fetching the breath. And both the rinde and the roote of the Fennel sodden in wine and drunk at the going to bed, & in the morning fasting, doth help such as be pained with the disease of the stone, if the same sicknes proceedeth of a hot cause: and the Fennel eaten, doth comfort the stomach, and helpeth digestion: and the like doth the pouder of the seed either eaten or drunk. And the root sodden vntill the same be soft, & laid hot on womens paps beginning to impostumate, dooth heale them. And the iuce pressed into a porrenger, and the same set for fifteene daies in the sunne, which dropped into the eies, doth in short time after cleare and amend the dimnes of the sight. And a litle of the Aloes Hepaticke put to this iuce, and the same set in the sunne for fifteene daies, which after drop into the eyes, & it wil greatly amend the sight. And aboue al other waies with the iuce for the sight, this especially is best comended, that the iuce be boiled betweene two dishes on a chafing dish with coles, and that the water which standeth like a dew on the vpper dish, be poured still as it riseth into a glasse: and this do so long vntill no more drops appeare in the vpper dish, & after drop of that water into your eies, & it wil greatly amend & cleare the sight. And the iuce of the Fennell tempered with honie and dropped warme into the eares, doth kill the wormes increased and felt in them. And the root with the licour sodden again with wine, and that drunk doth help the paine of the crampe, and healeth the drop sicke. And the iuce of the leaues mixed with vineger, and annointed on burning swellings doth aswage them. These hitherto of the properties of Fennell.

*Of the ordering, and care, of the Annis.**Chap. 16.*

THe Annis doth desire a well digged and fat ground, and commeth berry well vp in other places, by dunging and moisture, and it is sown in February and March, either alone or with other hearbes.

The phisicke helps.

The Annis is hot and drie in the third degree, and hath the vertue of consuming and dissoluing: and the seeds also may be kept for four yeares in much efficacie & strength, if they be hanged vp. And washing your face in the distilled water of this herb, it doth much cleere the same, so that this water be measurably vsed and with discretion, for too often vsing of it doth make the face yellowe. And against the black & blew of a stripe (especially if the same be about the eies) let the feedes with the Cummine be brused together, wrought with wax, & apply hot to the grieved place: And to the increasing of milk in the breasts and of spearme, this powder of Annis either eaten or drunke, doth greatly help: & this onely is caused by opening the passages of the milk & spearme. And in what manner soeuer the feedes be vsed, they assuage the swellings which both harden the bowells and greeue the stomach. And the eating of the seeds any season together, doth both heat the liuer and helpeth digestion. And the Annis seeds sodden in wine & mixed with Sinamon and Masticke and that drunk, do mightily helpe the greuous belchings proceeded of a colde stomach. And the Annis feedes sod in water and drunke with hartes-tung, doth help the stopping both of the liuer and milt, and helpeth all kinde of the drop sicke, and stayeth the disease (called the whites) in women.

And the powder of Annis seeds sowed in a linnen bag, and boyled in wine, and after applied hot vnto the womans priuie place doth both cleanse her body, & bringeth downe the tearmes. And the seeds taken with Castorie, do help the swelling of the stomach & bowells. And the feedes brused into powder and tempered with honie, Ilope and vineger,

68 The sowing and setting of hearbes,

and boyled together, and then the gargling of the same in the throte, doth help the disease called the squince: and the same prepared with wine, & drūk, do help the impostumes of the stomacke and the cough. And the Annis seeds either eaten or drunk with vineger and honie, do help the strangling or stopping of the matrice. These hitherto of the properties of the Annis seedes.

Of the ording, care, and secrets of Commine. Chap. 17.

The Commine delighteth to be sown in a fat and well dressed ground, and vnder a warme aite, either in March or in the middle of the spring the seedes ought to be sown. And they do best prosper being sown among other hearbs.

Some ancient Authors write, that seedes prosper the better and grow the plentifullier, if they be sown with cursed wordes, but I commend not this manner in sowing.

The Phisicke helpes.

Commine is hot and dry in the third degree, as *Aegineta* writeth, and the seeds also may be kept for five yeares, and vsed in meates, drinks, and sauces, for that they comfort & help digestion. And the wine of the decoction of Commine seeds, drie Figs, and of Fennel seeds vsed together, do mittigate the paine and gripings of the greate guts, comming of windines. And the same wine also like ordred, doth preuail against the cough comming of cold. And against the swelling of the cheekes, take Commine seeds and Figs well bruised together, & after seeth them in wine, which lay plaister wise on the greued place, and it doth help the same. And against the colde reume of the head, take powder of Commine seeds and Bay berries, which heate together in an earthen potte, and putting the same after into a little linnen bagge, apply warme on the head, and this without doubt helpeth that griefe. And against the black and blewe of a stripe, or any other maner, done whiles the same is yet fresh and new, you must take the fine powder of the Commine seedes, and wax, and worke the same together at the fier, and

and often apply that plaister warme vnto the greued place, which so vsed, is thought a sure and perfect remedie. And the Cummine seeds, sodden in wine with Fenegreeces, do take away swellings, and the griping paine of the guts. And the seeds brused & tempered with the white of an egg and that laid on the eye, doth take away the rednes of the same. And the Cummin seedes boyled in wine, and laid hot on the Nauell, doth ease the strangurie, and all other passions of the bladder. And the Cummin seeds sodden in water (if the face be washed with the same) do cause the face to be clearer and fairer, so that the same be now & then vsed: for the often & much vsing of it, doth make the face pale. And the Cummine seedes bruised and boyled with vineger, and applyed warme to the nosethrills, doth stay the much bleeding at the nose, and womens succeffe of the Reddes. These hitherto of the properties of the Cummine seede.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Coliander.

Chap. 18.

Coliander ioyeth to be sown in a fat ground, although it will well inough prosper in a leane ground: and the seedes, the elder they shall be (so that they be not utterly decayed with age) the sooner and better they will prosper and come vp, and they must be often watered. And Palladius writeth, that the seedes may be sown from the middle of March to October.

The Phisicke helps.

The hearbe Coliander is sufficient common, and hath the vertue of cooling, as writeth *Diocorides*, although others write (as *Vigornius*) that the Coliander is colde and dry, and others to be hot and dry. For by the effect it is knowen to be hot, in that it doth reserue windines, and wens: and on the other side againe, the seeds shew it to be cold and dry, in that (after meat) eaten, they stay the vapours rising vp that they ascend not vnto the head. And the seeds in receipts may well be vsed & kept for two yeares. And the seeds haue the vertue of helping digestion & the paines of the stomacke with windines, if they be ministred in meat. And the wine

70 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

of the decoction of Coliander drunke, doth the likes also the powder of the seeds cast on meats, do cause them digest the better.

And *Iscodorus* writeth, that the powder of the seedes ministred in sweet wine, do cause men to be the proner to the veneriall act, yet the same too much vsed, is euill; for that it bringeth men vnto a frēzines, and raging with themselues; and the much eating of the hearb and seeds together, is venomous to dogs, and killeth them: and further; the confects made of the Coliander seeds with sugar, do not only strengthen the stomack by vsing them, but repress the vapours ascending to the head, and therfore, the rather to be vsed in meats of those which be molested with the falling sicknes: For the cause of this sickenes, doth proceed of the vapours which rise from the stomacke vnto the head. And the seeds may not be eaten raw, but rather steeped in vinegar, or couered ouer with sugar: for that being either steeped in vinegar, or couered with sugar, before the eating, doth stay the humors rising from the stomack vnto the head. And he Coliander seeds prepared with vinegar, & brused, and after taken with the iuce of Plantine, staieth the great bleeding of the nose. And *Xenocratus* writeth a marueilous matter (if the same be true,) that if a woman eat but one grain of the seeds, that then her courses, shall runne for one day: if two graines, then two daies together, if three graines, then three daies together: and thus, looke how many graines, & so many daies following they shall continue. But this hearbe is forbidden to be taken inward, for that it harmeth the head and blood. And the iuce of Coliander mixed with vinegar, doth both coole and help the holy fire; and the seedes a little brused and giuen in raisons to eat, doth slea the wormes in children. And the iuce of the hearbe, with the iuce of Lettuce, of Plantine, the white of an Egg, and oyle of Roses, all these laboured well together, and after laid on hot impostumes, and burning swellings, or blisters, doe both assuage and heale them. These hitherto of the Coliander.

Of the ording, and care of Mustard seeds. Chap. 19

Mustard Seedes toy to be sowen in a tilled and well laboured ground, and rather on the ridge of furrowes although they will spring in any ground. and be nourished in fine earth like to powder of starch. And the seeds must be raked over, whereby they may be covered in the ground, for that they toy in the natural moisture continuing in the earth: and the seedes which you prepare to be eaten (in transposing the plants) they will be stronger. Also the seeds sowen before and after winter, do desire a fat ground, and to be thin sowen, for so they come up better then being thicke sowen: and after the plants be well sprung up, they may be remoued and set a gaine.

The phisicke helpes.

Mustard seeds be hot and dry in the fourth degree, & the seeds onely to be kept for fine yeres: and the seeds haue the vertue of dissoluing, attracting, & extenuating. And against the palse of the tongue, the seeds only chewed and holden vnder the tongue, do help the same. And against the palse in other members, let the seeds be put into a litle bag, and soddē in wine, laid on the grievued place, but especially in the beginning of the siknes. And the powder of the seeds drawn up by the nose, doth prouok sneezing, & purgeth the brain of superfluities. And also *Plinie* writeth, that the seedes doe extenuate and deminish the clammy and grosse humours & doe heale the stings of Serpents and Scorpions, being ministered with vinegar. And the seeds do marueylously purge, breake the stone, cause an appetite, & comfort the stomack. And the seeds brused with *Enula Campana*, and that laid on ripe impostumes, do both breake and draw them without paine. And the seeds garguled with water and honny, doth help the blistering of the mouth and the Squeeze. And the seeds eaten with figs and *Cummine* mixed together, doth helpe the dropsie. And a like quantity of Mustard seeds, *Pellitory* and *Ginger*, mixed together with rosed honnie, and also washing the mouth there-with, and holding the same a good while in the mouth, dooth purge the braine

of

The sowing & setting of hearbes.

of such euil humours, which especially causeth greuous a-
king and paine of the head: and the selfe same doth help the
falling of the roose of the mouth, & the vlcers in the throte:
and to haue a clere voice to sing, take the meale of mustard
seeds, and worke the same with honie into little balls, of the
which swallow one down euery morning, and it shal cause
you to haue a cleare voice in short time. And the chawing
of the Mustard seeds in the mouth, doth drawe downe and
purge the flegme of the head. These hitherto of the mustard
seeds.

*Of the ordering, and care, bech of the Chervill
and Caper. Chap. 20.*

Cheruill desireth to be sowed in a fertile, moystie, and
well dunged ground, And to be sowed in the moneth of
August, for so it serueth very well all the winter thoroowe.
And the Capers ioi in a barren and leane ground, and flou-
rish, and beare their floure in the Sommer, and annoy al o-
ther herbes growing neere them. And they also wither and
dye away, at the setting and going out of sight of the seauen
starres.

*Of the ordering and care of the hearb
Dill. Chap. 21.*

The hearb Dill, desireth the common earth of the garden,
and to be sowed in the moneth of February or March,
and in the months also of September, or October, And in a
gentle and wholsome place: it may be sowed in the month of
December, either by it selfe, or among other hearbes, and wel
beareth or suffereth all conditions of weather: but it most
ioyeth in the warme weather, and to be thin sowed and wa-
tered, if they be not otherwise delued and moistned with
showers. And some couer not the seeds with earth after the
sowing, supposing that the birds will not eate vp the seedes,
lying so bare.

The Phisicke helpes.

Dill is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seedes
may be kept for three yeres, although they be the better, if
yearly they be renewed, & the seeds also be chiefly occupi-
ed,

ed in the medicine. And now the decoction of the hearb & seeds do preuaile & help the straightnes of pissing, and increaseth milk in the breasts. And against the pain of the matrice, take a handfull of Dill, boyling the same in wine, and after applying it in plaister forme vnto the grieued place, it doth help the same. But *Auicenn* writeth, that the much and often eating of Dill, doth weaken & make dim the sight: & yet if any vse the hearb, it procureth sleep, & the rather if the head be annointed with the oyle of Dill. And the ancient Phisitians write, but especially *Galen*, that garlands made of the greene hearb & worne on the head, procure sleepe: and the iuce or oile of Dill dropped warme into the eares, doth help the pain of them. And the Dill sodden with Poppy seedes, and drunk, doth stay vomiting, and the gripings & wind of the belly. And the ashes of Dill doth help all the diseases of the fundament, and paine of the priuities: and it may profitably be annointed on moist vlcers, and especially, those (as *Galen* writeth) which are often in the priuities. And the decoction of the Dill in wine, being drunke, doth help such as are pained with the strangury. And the Dil sodden with suger & mixed with oyle and wine, and after drunk, doth help the matrice, send downe the after burden, and draw down the termes, taking to the quantity of two drammes at a time. And take the seeds of Dill & Nettle, a like quantity, those beate into fine powder, which mix with water and hony, and after lay that plaster-wise on the piles of the fundament, & it will heale them in short time. These hitherto of the hearb Dill.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Rue. Chap. 22.

Rue or hearbgrate, desireth to be sown in a sunny place and drye, in the mouth of March, and that the earth be mixt with ashes. And this hearb to be sown on high beds, whereby the proper moisture may shed therefro: as *Palladius* writeth. And the bare seeds also without huskes, may be strewed on beds, and couered ouer with fine drye earth with a rake. And the yong plantes sprung out of the seeds,

The sowing & setting of hearbes.

being in the huskes be the stronger, although they be longer in the appearing aboue the earth. And the yong plantes hate both moisture and dung, and rather togeth in the dung of ashes, and if cannot well abide the cold of winter, and therefore desireth to be couered on the beds with ashes, whereby the same may the better defend them from the sharpenes of the coldesthrough the heate therof. And if they be spynckled with water, then do they faster spring vp, as writeth Theophrastus: yet may not the plantes be moued with any yron, for feare of hindring their growth. And when the yong plantes be somewhat come vp, then weede them diligently, whereby the weeds hinder not their growth. You must not onely sow the seeds, but set the slippes, being slipped off from the greater stalkes neare to the rootes in the spring time, and in the month of August, and that the slippes be withed at the ends for so they speedily take roote in the earth. And the whole plant remoued and set againe, doth seldome prosper, but dyeth soone after the new setting, which the slippes broken off from the stalkes contrary do. And they prosper many yeares without withering any thing, so that a woman (hauing then her tearmes) come not nigh nor handle the hearbe, for that by handling, the hearb doth by little and little wither and dye away, as writeth Collumella.

And some write, that Rue set within the Beane, boared throughe, and couered with earth, doth in the growing take away the strong smell of the hearbe.

And both Plinie and Palladius write, that the Rue more togeth and plentifullyer groweth, by being set vnder the shadowe of the fig tree. And of this, Theophrastus iudgeth that to be the best hearb grace, which being planted throughe the fig tree barke, is so couered with earth.

And the weeding also of this hearb with bare hands whilist the deaw hangeth on the leaues, doth cause dangerous blisters and sores.

And therefore if any by ignorance doth weede about the plantes without gloues on their handes, and that the handes be after infected both with an itch and swelling or blisters, then

with their phisicall helpes. 75

then let the person annoint his hands with sallet oyle, or for lacke of oyle, with the iuce of Hemlocke, and it will heale them in short time.

And the iuce of the hearbgrace sprinkled on Hens, Cocks, chickens or any other poultrie sitting on the rooste, or sprinkled in the poultrie house, doth drine away Weaselles by the strong smell of the hearb, for it is a speciall defence against such kinde of vermine. And to drine away either gnats or flies out of your chamber, take a greene branch of the hearbgrace (as Democritus writeth) and with the same sprinkle water round about your chamber. And thus much for the ordning the hearbgrace.

The Phisicke helpes.

Hearbgrace is hot and dry in the third degree, & both the leaues and seedes may well be vsed in medicine. And the seedes also ought to be gathered in haruest, which may well be kept for five yeares, and the leaues dried, for al poysons, & a peculiar Triacle for the poyre, which not only the King *Methridates* witnesseth, but very experience, doth daily reach the same: yea, both curious painters, and fine grauers do often eat of this hearb with their meates, for the cleering and amending of the sight. And Rue eaten doth put away winde and dulleth the desire to the veneral act. And the leaues eaten with dry figs and walnuts together, is the surest remedie that may be against any deadly poyson, if the same be taken in time.

And to make another preferuatiue of the same, somewhat more costly, is on this wise: Take an ounce of the leaues of Rue, halfe an ounce of figs, halfe an ounce of Iuniper berries, two ounces of walnuts, and four ounces of vinegar; all these mix and labour together, of the which, swallowe downe a little fasting in the morning when you rise, and you shal be defended all that day from being poysoned. And it is also a singular & precious Triacle against a pestilēt aire: and the herbgrace sodden in vinegar and drunk, putteth away belching. And the herb sodden in wine with figs, vntil the halfe be consumed, and after drunke, dooth mightily helpe

76 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

the dropſie, the paines alſo of the breſts, ſides, and loynes : yea, the ſame drunk, doth help the cough, the diſeaſes of the liuer, the lungs and the kidneis, ſo that there hang no ague on the patient : and the hearb ſodden with oyle, and after caſt vp in gliſter form, doth put away the paines of the womans places, and the ſwellings of the great gutte. And the hearb bruſed with oyle, & laid-plaiſter-wiſe on all the priuie place vnto the fundament, dooth help the ſtrangling of the primitie. And the hearb ſodden with Iſop and Annis in wine, doth put away gripings, eyther drunk or ſomented on the greeced place. And a plaiſter made of the hearb with oil and laid on the navell, dooth kill the wormes of the bellye. And the eating of the hearb grace doth amend & put away the ſmel of onyons & garlick: and the hearb grace helpeth thoſe diſeaſed with the ague, if the ſame be ſodden in oil o-line, & before the fit come, the body be annointed with the ſame, or els the ſame put (before the fit) in gliſter wiſe. And the hearb ſodden in oile & dropped hot into the eares, doth expell the wormes. And the hearb ſodden with mirre, and drunk, doth put away the water betweene the ſkin and the fleſh. And the iuce of Rue mixed with the oile of roſes and vineger, and annointing the head therwith, doth put away the beating paine therof. And the hearb ſodden in Fumitory water, and drunk, doth help children diſeaſed with ſmall pockes. If children hauing the meaſels, be not already blinded with them, then hang both the roote of Rue and Scabious about the childrens neckes, and they ſhal be defended therby by Gods permiſſion. And an ointment made of the hearb with oile of Roſes, Ceruſe & vineger, doth heale any ſcabbe, the holy fire, running ſores, and hot bliſters. And the hearb with Garlike, ſalte and walnuts mixed together, and layed plaiſter-wiſe on the bite of a mad Dogge or Adder, it doth heale the ſame: And againſt the weaknes of ſight, proceeded of a chollerick ſumofitic, drink then of the wine wherein this hearb hath bene laid to ſoake in the veſſel, for a while before: Alſo the hearb mixed with Roſe-water & laid on bleared eies, do marueilouſly cleſe & heale them,

And

And against the tooth-ach, take the hearbe sodden in wine, and lay that plaster-wise on the grieved place. Or this wise, take the stalke of the same hearbe, and burne the same somewhat in the fire, and with that burne the hollownesse within the tooth. And against the coldnes of the stomacke, and palsie of the other members, drink the decoct. of this herb with Castorie: and against the stopping of the liuer & milt, and straightnes of making water, drink the hearb with the root of Fenel sodden in wine together, or the pouders of the root of the Fenell, with the iuce of the hearbe. And against the straightnes of making of water, and bloudie fluxe, seeth the hearb in wine and oile, and lay it plaister-wise on the root of the priuity. And young married wiues may seldome eat of this herb, for feare of hindring cōception at any time. And the person annointed with the iuce of this hearbe, or bearing the hearb about him, shall not be bitten or stinged of any venemous worme or beaste. And last, the Rue of propertie doth driue away all venemous beasts & wormes out of that ground which is set about with that hearb: and this beeing planted in Gardens neere to the beddes of Sage, the Toad will not come neere the same, vnder which (as some write) they delight to be. These hitherto of the properties of the Hearbe Grace.

Of the ordering, and care, of the herb Ilope.

Chap. 23.

Ilope is a fruitfull Plant, and necessarie in the Garden, which ought to be sowne or set in slippes or whole Plants, neither in fat nor dunged ground, but in an open and sunnie place: and after the hearbe is well sprung vp, then may it endure the frostes and Snow in Winter. And Palladius wil- leth the Ilope to be set in whole Plants in the moneth of February. And in the Summer, when the hearbe beareth his floure, then cut off the same, and drie it in the shadow.

The Phisicke helps.

The Ilope of qualitie is hot and drie in the second degree: yet Galen affirmeth, that Ilope is hot & drie in the third degree,

gree, but the same is of the thin parts. And when the same is to be vsed in medicine, then ought the leaues to be stripped from the stalkes, and the stalkes cast away as vnprofitable, but the leaues may well be kept for a yeare.

And now the Ilope sodden in spring water, with figs, honny, and Rue, and after drunk, doth helpe those diseased in the Lungs, fetching their breath short, an olde cough proceeding through the distillings from the head, vnto the lower parts, and in the fetching of breath (none otherwise) then by reaching the neck vpright, and slayeth all maner of wormes in the belly. And the iuce of the hearbe drunke with Oximell, doth loose a costieue belly: and the same iuce taken with the seeds of Cresses, doth gently loose the belly, and causeth a cleare face, and good colour of the skin, if any drinketh thereof.

And the hearb boyled with pure duckes grease, and figs, and that laid in plaister forme on the milt, doth take away the swelling therof.

And against the hardnes or swelling of the milt, and the water betweene the skinne, boyle the hearb with figs and Salt Niter, and lay that plaister-wise on the griued places. And the hearb sodden in wine, and drunk, doth cleanse the breast: and sodden in water, doth swage the swelling of the gummies, by washing the mouth therewith. And the hearb sodden in wine with fenell seeds, being drunk, doth take away both paine of the stomacke, and bowelles: and a foment also made with the hearb sodden & applied vnto the stomacke, doth the like effect: and the same foment applied beneath, dooth purge and cleanse womens places of the superfluous humours. And for the disease of the Squince, the hearb sodden with figs, & that garguled in the throte, doth greatly help: and the hearb sodden in vineger, with the which, wash the gummies of the teeth, and it will cease the ach and paine of them. And of the Ilope made a wine, named Ilope wine, doth help by drinking thereof, the diseases of the breast, the sides, & the lungs, the shortnes of winde, and an old cough: the same prouoketh vrine, & helpeth the gripings

Sripings & nippings of the body, and ceaseth the cold shaking of a daily Ague, and draweth downe the termes. These hitherto of the properties of Iſope.

Of the ordering and care of the Mints. Chap. 24

Mints may be planted neere vnto a well, or other running water, for that the hearbe delighteth in a moyst place, and to be set either in slips, or in the whole rootes, and flourisheth in the Sommer, but withereth in the Winter. And this hearb ought to be set in anunny place, but in no berie fat ground, nor danged: and this hearbe may not be mosed after the growing with any Iron, as we haue aforetaught. And this hearb once sowne and prouing, doth continue many yeares after in the Garden. And Plinie writeth, that the Mints ought to be set in the beginning of the month of March.

The Phisicke helpes.

Mints in the Garden are hot and dry in the second degree, and all the sorts of mints in the garden, do both comfort the stomacke, and help digestion. And now the mints brought to powder and eaten in milke, dooth slea the wormes of the belly: and the hearb eaten, doth loose the belly: and the daily vsing of this hearb, doth giue a good colour: and at any time eatē, is very healthful to the body. And the iuce of the hearb mixed with a little Brimstone and vinegar, and that anointed on the holy fier with a feather, doth cease the pain forth with. And mints sodden with wine & drunk, doth ease the pain of the kidnies, and bowels: and sodden in wine and oile, & that laid plaister-wise on impostumes, doth dissolve & cure them. And against the stinking fauour of the mouth and rotten nes of the gums and teeth, let then the mouth & gums, be washed with vinegar, of the decoction of garden mints, & after rubbed with the powder of dry mints, or with dry mints. And against the brest hardned by the curding of the milk, take a great handful of the mints, & the same seeth in wine and oile, & after lay that plaster-wise on the paps & it helpeth them. And further note, that when any medicine is giuen against poyso, the same ought to be ministred with

the iuce of Mints, or with wine of the decoction of it, if you cannot get (at that time) the iuce, or the onely iuce of Mints, or wine of the decoction of it, or the iuce of it with honie commixed together, doth helpe the same. Also the same helpeth the stopping of the Liuer and Milt, and the waies of the vrine proceeding of a cold humour, and of the hot without an Ague. And the iuce ministred with honie, doth flea the worms in the belly, & it doth also kil worms, dropped into the eares. And the mints put into milke, will not suffer the milke to curd, although the runnet be put in to it: and in the like sort, it doth hinder generation. These hitherto of the properties of garden mints.

newm

Of the ordering, and care of the Garden Time.

Chap. 25.

The Garden Time is a plant right profitable, which delighteth rather to be set in the whole plants, then sown in the seeds, in a leane and stony ground, and that open in the Sun, but neither in fat nor dunged ground. And Theophrastus writeth, that it will well enough prosper, if the Planets be set with the flowers growing on them. And Palladius writeth, that the best time for the setting of it, is in the latter end of the moneth of September, in a sunnie place, and stony ground.

The phisicke helpes.

The Garden Time is hot and drie in the third degree, and doth prouoke vrine, and the termes in women, and purgeth also the bowells, by drinking thereof in wine. This Time sodden with honie and drunk, doth helpe such as fetch the winde short, and helpeth in a maner all other griefes of the breast, by spitting forth the corrupt matter. And four drams of the fine powder of Time, taken with six spoonefull of Oximell, doth purge choller, and cleanse the bladder.

Not to be used

C. Pollar

In some

for belly

And if the belly swelleth, then take one dram of the fine powder of this Gardē Time, with a spoonfull of mellicrate, which drunk fasting, doe ease the paine of the boweles and loynes. And to take away the wind of the breast, the sides, and

ard flankes, drink the quantity of three drams of the powder, with a spoonfull of Oximel mixed together: also three drams of this powder mixed with a spoonful of oximel doth purge the melancholly, and dulnes of the senses proceeding of melancholly: & the same potion also giueth the clearenes of sight, and helpeth the paines of the eyes, if it be taken fasting: also the powder helpeth such, grievously pained with the gout, being giuen with wine: and this Time must be moderately vsed, for the much eating of it doth greatly heat, and yet beware of the black Time, for that the same dooth corrupt and ingender choller: but vse that only which beareth a purple flower, hauing some whitenesse withall. Thus much of the Garden Time.

Of the ordering and care, of the hearb Organie. Chap. 26.

Organie delighteth to be set in rough & stony places, and to be dunged and watered till the same be well fastned in the earth. And it also delighteth in the same order of dressing as doth the parcel.

And Palladius willeth that Organie be set in September about the time of the Suns entring into Libra. And it ought then to be gathered when it beareth floures, and to be dried in the shadowe, for so the leaues and floures will continue for a yere, if they be before stripped from the stalks, and the stalks cast away.

The Phisick helps.

Organie of the garden is hot and drie in the third degree, and the kindes of Organy haue the vertue of cutting a sun-der, drying, drawing, and also consuming: but the root of any of them haue no vertue in medicine. This Organie helpeth any person that is diseased in the liuer, by drinking the decoction of the floures, and the floures and leaues put into a litle linnen bag, and the same boyled in wine, & applyed hot to the head (the pacient then couered with clothes to sweate) doth driue forth and put away many griefes of the head and brest, and helpeth also the streightnes of fetching breath. And the Organie sod in wine, & drunk, doth help the stomacke, and ease the bowels. And the same decoction

laide on the belly, doth prouoke vrine, and being drunke warme, doth ease the grieuous paine in making of water, & the dropping of the Vrine, and to helpe the disease of going often to the stoole and dooing nothing, take the pouder of Organy, and strew or sprinckle that on the fundament, and it will shortly after loose the belly & bring forth the ordure. And the hearb it selfe sodden in wine oliue, and the same striked on a linnen cloth, & applied after to the womans priuy place, doth take away the hardnes therof, and purgeth it, and draweth downe the tearmes: and to heale the red leapry take the iuice of Organy, the iuice of horhound, a little wine and the like of the oyle of Henbane, yet more of them then of the iuice, putting to them also a little oyle of tartar, which so don, mix altogether, anointing the partie in an hot house before his coming forth: & if that after his comming forth he be greued with pain, let him take Goates grease melted in a frying pan, with the which annointe the places againe, and after lye downe in a cleane paire of sheetes, lying there so long vntill the same be dried in, and after take and bruse the Organy, mixing the same with wheaten bran, and heat that in a frying pan, and this being so hot as may be suffered lay vpon the blisters and leaprie, & binding a cloth vpon it, let it so lye vntill the same neede hearing againe: and this doe so often, vntill the patient be healed, which the same wil do without doubt, and in the meane while let the patient eat such things as do ingender good blood, & be of an easie digestion, and dayly to drinke the sirup of Fumitorie: and if the same happen in the winter, then to drinke the sirrope of Egrimony in such sort.

And further, the iuice of Organye with womans milke dropped warme into the eares, doth ease the paine of them, and the hearb brused with Roses, Calamus Aromaticus, and wormewood, and this applied hot, doth send vp againe the fundament into the proper place. The schitherto of the properties of the Organy.

with their Phisicall helps.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Violets. Chap. 27.

Violets (after the minde of Columella) ought to bee planted in Beds a foote high, and the earth well laboured and turned in with dung, and that the Plants bee not aboue a yeare olde, and to bee set in short furrowes a foote broad, in the beginning of the Spring, or in the entrance of the moneth of March. And the seeds may be sown in beds twice a yere, first in the Spring time and after in the harvest, but the later sowing prospereth the worse with vs, through the colde season following: which Violets ought in like sort to be weeded, and the olde withered leaues cut away and watered (when neede so requireth) as you doe other Pot-herbes in the coming vp. And to haue one plant bring forth sundrie colours together, take the leaues of all the colours of Violets, and put them together into a thin woone linnen cloath, and after set them in a well dunged and laboured ground, as before was taught. And this note, which by experience hath bene found true, that vnlesse the fairest Violet be remoued, it will beare both a smaller flower, and a lesser of smell, then it did in the yeare before.

The Phisicke helps.

Violets be colde in the end of the second degree. The violets ought especially to be gathered in March, and dried in a shadowy place of the aire, & there be also three kindes of them which are vsed in medicine, as the white: the blacke and yellow: and the floures drunke, do take away the windes of the stomacke: and the decoction of the floures gargled in the throat, doth help the disease called the squince.

And the iuice of this hearbe doth put away any swelling proceeding of a hot cause, and two drams of the powder of the seedes drunken in wine, dooth draw downe the tearmes of women, and the roote sodden in wine, and laide vpon the swollen Milt, doth put away the swelling, and dryeth vp the humour.

And the roote sod in wine, and laide plaister-wise on the

84 The sowing and setting of hearbes,

four
hot gout, doth ease the paine. And white Vyolets boyled,
and laide in plaister forme vnto the belly of a woman, doth
send forth the dead yongling, and put away the swellings of
the priuie place: and if a foment of them be applyed to the
nether part vpward, it doth mundifie the priuy place, and
draw downe the tearmes: and the Vyolets applyed, dooth
ease the paine of the head (proceeding of an vntemperate
hotnes) causeth sleep, soften & mak easie the breist & throat,
help the pallat of the mouth fallen, & the squince: but the
sirof of the Vyolets do especially workethese aboue saide:
and the only smell of the floures, take away the head-ache:
solace
and the roots boyled with Vineger and drunk, & the same
annoynted on the spleene, doth assuage the swelling, & ea-
seth likewise the gout: and the hearb with the root boyled
& applyed to Children, doth help their cough: and the oyle
oyle of violets
of vyolets doth heal many diseases: as first, dropped into the
eares, doth put away the greets of them, & taketh away the
head-ache by annointing the head therewith. And the same
oyle mixed with worme-seedes, and annointing the bellye
Prin of oyle
therewith, doth expell and send foorth the wormes. And the
sirof of the Vyolets doth help the burning of the ague, lose
the bellye, and quallifieth a hot Liuert and the purple Vio-
lets drunk in water, do loose the belly, qualifie choller, help
inflammations, cease thirst, and put away the iaundise: and the
same doth the conserue of Violets. These hitherto of the vi-
olets.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of all Roses.

Chap. 28

For that Roses bee pleasant ornaments in a garden, and so
necessarie (all the kindes) in medicine, wee minde heere
largely to write of the sowing and setting of all the kindes.

For all kindes of Roses may not bee set either in fat and
clayie ground, nor moist or wet earth, but in a fine earth
dunged with store of drie rubbish, and in short slips of a foote
long, and in verie short furrowes. For to bee sown in the
seedes, they come slowly vp.

And heere note, that you may not thinke those to bee the
seedes

seedes of the Rose, which grow in the middle of the floure, in colour like unto gold, but that the seedes be in that part which resembleth the forme of a small Beare in the vpper end of the stalke, on which the leaues of the floure sticke. And now the seedes are then ripe to bee gathered, when as the grapes with vs bee full ripe, which ripenesse of them is well known both by their fulkith and brownish colour, and by their softnesse in the feeling. And note further, that the beds of Roses, must be high cast vp, which you ought especially to doe in the moneth of March, hauing your ground then in a readinesse, and the day faire. And ordering your Beds after this manner yearely, they will continue many yerres: and when they war olde, then dig vp the earth about them, and prune them by cutting from them all the withered stalkes and dead branches, and repairing the emptie places with new slippes, after the minde of Palladius. And some wil, that the olde Plants with the rootes being digged vp, and cut a spanne long, to be new set againe. And other wil, that the young springs with their rootes bee set a foote a sunder each from the other, well dunged & often watered. And if you haue not sufficient plants to set out your Beds, then between the olde plants set young springs, slipped off from the old, and the olde set againe with the rootes and al, and that a foot a sunder each from the other, wel dunged and often watered, for so they grow the plentifuller and faster. And at the end of euerie yeare, new set them againe, and prune and cut away the superfluous branches at the setting of each roote, and digge also fresh earth often about them, for in that they ioy. And the Roses will smell the sweeter, if they bee gathered in faire and drie daies: and to haue your Roses iouer then any other, and pleasanter of smell, make little gutters too hand breadth from the roots, and poure warme water morning and euening into the gutters, which so through the heate doth greatly comfart the Plantes, and maketh them grow the faster.

Also Didimus writeth, that if you set Carlike heads heere and there among your Roses, they will smell farre pleasanter, thoroowe the continuall heate sent from them. And here note,

that the manner of the watering aboue said, ought not to bee done before the cups or verie young buds appeare, and then dayly after, to water vnto the gathering.

And to haue Roses euerie moneth, you must then (as Didimus writeth) new plant, dung and water them often euerie moneth. But to haue Roses monethly cannot be possible, neither in our countrie of England, nor in any other Countrie, lying vnder the sporth, so well as in the temperate and warme countries. And this note, that those Roses which grow in a drie ground, bee farre sweeter then those growing in a wet ground.

And to haue timely Roses, sift then your earth through a Sieue, and that earth mire with dung, and put the same into an earthen pot, which after moisten a little, setting the same abroad in sunnie and warme daies, or letting small and fine raine fall vppon it, and at the setting of the Sunne take in the pot alwaies; and this so long do (and watering it the whiles) untill the winter and colde weather be past. And after this, when a faire day commeth, then set the pot in the earth, couering it ouer and about the plants with fresh earth, and doe afterward (as aboue is taught) and you shal so haue timely Roses.

And to keepe Roses all the yeare, doe as Didimus teacheth: take greene Barley, being yet as grasse, (and not eared) with the rootes, and all those put into an earthen pot, not glazed, or rather vnnealed: into which, put your buds nothing opened, and diligently couer them about with this greene barley, and you shall keepe them fresh and greene so long as you list (couering the mouth of the pot close) euen as though they grew still in beds on their stalkes. And others, strew the green Barley on pauement or hard floze, and in the blades they bury or hide the buds. Also other take yong Buds, a little opened at the setting of the Sunne, and in no wise touching them with hands, but properly gather them with a sharpe knife, & those lay on a drie boord, letting them be abroad all the night throggh if the night be faire: after, haue in a readinesse your earthen pot, well glazed both within and without: but some thinke

if better, if not nealed at all, but whether way you like best, (that vse) and put therein your Roses before the Sunne be vp in the morning, and stop close your pot with clay, mired with horse dung and flockes, that no aire breathe out at the mouth of the pot, which so done: then set the pot into a bedde of drie sand, and couering it well ouer with the same drye sand, letting no moist place be neere to, or about the same. And on this wise, and by that other meanes afore taught, you may haue fresh Roses all the yeare through.

And here note, that Roses and other flowers, dyled either in the Sunne or Muen, doe longer and better retaine their strength, sauor, and colour, then being dyled in the shadowe, so that the same be done with discretion. And the like may bee thought to be done with the sweete and smelling Roses.

And as touching that way of making the white Roses to be red, and the red Roses to bee white, and so partie colours, with other pretty conclusions besides of the rose, you shal further read and vnderstand in my little treatise, intituled Naturall and Artificiall conclusions, where I largely write of these and many other right pleasant conclusions to bee read vnderstood of the common sort.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Rose is colde and drie in the second degree. Now, when the red Roses be not fully opened, they must be clipped off, and dyled in the Sunne. The roses hony eaten, doth profit much, for that the same doth both comfort the bloud and stomacke, and the iuce of the Roses sodden in wine, doth take away the paine of the head, and helpeth the eyes: and the gummes washed with the same, doth put away the paine of them: and the leaues of the roses bruised, and laide on inflammations, doth draw forth the heat. The seeds of roses beaten to poulder, doth ease the paine of the teeth, by rubbing the gums and teeth with the same poulder, and the heads (in which the seedes be sodden and drunke) do loose the belly, & help the spitting of bloud, Roses mixed with hony & sugar, & that eatē, do dry vp euil humors of the stomacke: & the leaues

Stomach

eyes

gum

inflammation

teeth

Stomach

leaves of the Roses soden in wine, and giuen to drink, doth helpe such griefes, as commonly happen in womens priuie places: and the fresh or new Rose leaves, mixed together with hony, doe aptly purge mans body, and to make an especiall Laxatiue, take two ounces of the iuyce of Roses, & mixe the same with Whay made of cowes milk, & a little spicknard: & you may also take the whay of milk, putting therto twelue ounces of rose leaves, and a little honnie, and this doth marueilous well loose and purge the belly. And sirop of roses onely (being made of fresh roses) dooth purge the belley: and rose leaves wrought together with hony & suger, do both comfort and purge the body: and that Vinegar is right profitable, in which the roses be infused or steeped for a night, to annoint or strike on hot members, or places of the body. & to a hot stomacke the same applied outward, doth greatly help & qualifie the hot burning therein: and the iuyce of roses, drunk with sweet conduit water, doth both loose the body, purgeth the blood, and especially choller, and putteth away the Kings euill: and the iuyce of roses onely taken, doth put away a great burning without danger, and bringeth a man (after the purging of his body) vnto a quiet rest: and the Roses doe comfort the heart, and reioyce the blood: and the rosed hony dooth both comfort and expell the melancholly and flegmatike matter; and giuen in that water, in which Fennel seedes is sodden, doth purge the better, if the same shall be mixed with a little salt.

The best making of the oyle of Roses is on this wise, first clip off the rose leaves from the whites, & boiling the same in oyle Oliue, then sun the same in a glasse for fiftie daies: & this is the best approued oyle. And this oyle applied to a hot liuer, doth greatly helpe: and annointed about the temples doth take away the aking or beating paines of the head, and cooleth it. The rose leaves vsed in meats, doth assuage both the heat of the stomacke and liuer, and the powder of rose leaves bruised with vinegar, & mixed with the white of an Eg, doth effectually heale the paine of the eyes, restraineth the humours, and the sheading of blood into the vaines of

the eyes, if the same be applied plaister-wise on the temples. And that which is called suger roset, hath the vertue of comforting and staying, & helpeth the bloudy fluxe, the chollerick vomiting, the faintnes of body, & the Cardiake passiō. And the dew salve on Rose leaues, & gathered into a cleane quill, which drop on the nether eyelid, and it wil amend the blearednes of the eyes. And the drye Rose leaues boyled in wine and drunk, doth amend the paines of the head, the eies, the eares and the gummes: & the same cast in glistre forme, doth help the corruptions both of the bowells and womens priuy places: And the red Rose water drū in *Balneo Maria* hath many goodly effects: for the same water drunk, doth strengthen & coole the braine, the heart, the stomack, and all the inward members: strengthneth also the spirits & natural heate, and preserueth from rotnennes. Take one ounce of this red Rosewater, a litle quantity of white wine, one dram of Tutia, to which ad of Aloes Hepatike and of suger candy of each twenty graines, these mix all together, which after drop, (as need requireth) into the eares, it doth cleanse, drye and strengthen the sight and the eies: and the same water dropped with a litle suger into the eies, doth help the exulceration and rednes of the eies, proceeding of heate: which being drunk fasting, vnto the quantity of three ounces, doth take away the giddines of the head, and strengthen the liuer. These hitherto of the properties of Roses.

Of the ording, care and secrets of the hearbe

Basil. Chap. 29.

Basil for his excellent smell and sauour hath bene greatly counted vpon in ancient time, insomuch that Kings and Princes (for the greate delight which they conceived in this hearbe) did plant the same in their gardens. And the time of sowing this hearb, after the minde of Columella, ought to be done in the beginning of the moneth of May, in fat earth: and when the seedes be sown and couered with earth, then to be pressed downe with a roller, and diligently trod downe with the fete, For if the Gardener shall leaue the seedes but

troden downe, that they do lye hollowe in the earth, they will putrifie and come to no prooffe. Theophrastus writeth a maruellous matter of the Basil, that if the seedes be sowne with curst wordes (like as some do in the Hempseed) that then they will come by the better and the sooner. but I rather wish to tarry the longer for them. The sooner the seedes will break and come by if after the sowing they be dayly sprinkled with warme water. And some wish the seeds to be sprinkled with vinegar if they be sowne towards the winter, for that with such sprinkling they sooner spring vp. And Pliny willethe the Basil to be watered onely at noone time of the day, wheras all other hearbes are to be watered morning and euening with cold water. And when the Basil is come by an handfull high, then to be cut off so right and straight as is possible, although it be forbidden in the like sort to touch it with yron, as the hearb-grace, Mintes and Sauery. And Gargilius Martialis writeth a maruellous matter and worthy to be noted, that the Basil sometimes bringeth forth purple floures, sometimes white, and sometimes red of colour like to the Rose.

And Crisippus (as writeth Pliny) affirmeth the hearb to be vnprofitable vnto the stomack, the vrine, & the clearenes of the eyes: besides, to cause frenzies, the forgetfull sleepines, and stoppings or corruptions of the Lauer: and for this hee thought it best to be eschewed both of men and goates. And the Greek writers think the Basil so disagreeing and contrary to women, that if the whole Basil with the root, be put secretly vnder the dish of meate set on the table (the woman not knowing thereof) that she shall not after taste of the meat so long as the hearb there lyeth. And Diodorus writeth that the much eating of Basil doth ingender abundance of lice.

The Physicke helpes.

For the temperament and qualitie of the Basill, Authors do not agree, for *Auicenn* writeth that it is hot and dry in the second degree, but *Galen* and *Agineta* write, that the Basil is heating in the second degree, & that it hath a certain excrement moisture, for the which cause, it is thought dangerous to receiue

to receiue inward, but outward to be anoynted, it doth put away and digest. And now the smelling to the Basil doth comforte the braine, and yet the smell there of doth greatly harme a weake braine. And the seedes ought to be gathered in the moneth of Iuly, for then they be best. And the leaues sodden and drunk, doth take away the swimming of the head: And the like doth the hearb preuaile, if it be steeped for a night in wine, and after drunk. And the hearb sodden in wine, doth cause it to be pleasant of smell, & heateth a cold stomacke, and helpeth digestion: and the poulder of the hearb drunk with the iuce of slowes, for eight daies together, doth helpe an outward rupture: and the decoction of this herb in water, and the same applyed like a foment about the priuie place, doth both cleanse the matrices, and drawe downe the tearmes: and the iuce of Basil drunke of women in trauell with childe, doth not onely moue forward the birth, but cleanseth the after birth: and the hearbe sodden in wine and oyle, and applyed to the fundament, doth cease the often desire to the stoole: and being boyled in raine water, and drunk with a little poulder of the iuce of slowes, doth help the fluxe of the belly, proceeding of cold. The seeds drawn dy the nostrils, prouoke sneeling: and being mixed with shomakers blacke doth take away warts, and maketh them rise vp by the rootes. And the seedes drunk do soften the belly and put away winde: and being drunk in wine, do put away all melancholly sadness, stirre vp the minde, cause boldnes vnto the fearfull, and make merry the sad. And the Basil helpeth the stomacke, for that it digesteth hard meates, and profitable it is both to the Liuer and hart: and the hearb brused and mixed with barley meale and vineger, and that laid in plaister forme, doth help inflammations of the Lungs: and the sauour of Basil doth help the stopping of the braine and nose, purgeth the head, & staieth the rewme: and the iuce of Basil dropped into the eies, doth cleanse the miltles of the eies, and running of them: and the hearb eaten worketh the like. These hitherto of the properties of the Basil.

*Of the ordering, care and secrets of the sweete
Mariorum. Chap. 30.*

Mariorum for the pleasant smell is an hearbe much esteemed of all persons, and may either be sowne in seedes or set in slips, and it togeth to be set in olde dung (the earth before well digged vp) and to be set in the moist and shadowey places, for so it groweth the fuller and big, but set in an open and sunny place, it groweth the shorter and crisped. It may either be sowne or set in the spring time, and remooued to beds well dressed with drie dung, for so it prospereth the better.

The Physicke helps.

Mariorum is hot and drie in the second degree, & ought to be gathered in the sommer when it floureth, and after dried in a shadowey place, for so it will serue for a yeare. And now the Mariorum sodden in lie, and the head washed with the same, doth cease the grieuous pain therof. Also the Mariorum comforteth the braine, openeth the stopping of the members, and taketh away the disease called Apoplexia. And the pouder of Mariorum, giuen with meate, or drunke in wine, doth heate the coldenes of the stomack, & comforteth digestion. And the drye leaues brought to pouder and annoynted with hony, do take away black and blew spots of the skin. And the oyle of Mariorum doth heat aswel the inner members as the outward, and the ioyns and sinewes. And the oile also doth heal womens places: & applyed warm doth help all greefes, comforteth the braine, & al the members of the body. Also this hearb hath the propertie of heating all the inner members, softneth the milke, and asswageth the swelling therof. The decoction of the hearb druk, doth help the water beginning between the skin, the streightnes of making of water, & the griping of the body. And y flour & hearblaid in a fine bag, & that applyed to the stomack, doth take away the paine & greefe therof. And the pouder of the Mariorum drawne vp into the nose, doth both cleanse and likewise heate the head, and may serue all persons for the like cause. And the vapour of the decoction of this hearbe
received

receiued beneath, dooth cleanse the matrice: and the hearbe made in a pessarie, and applied vp, dooth draw downe the tearmes. The hearb with waxe applied in plaister forme on loose members, doth strengthen them, aswageth swellings and other griefes. And the pouder of the Marioram, with a little ginger, drawn vp in the nose, dooth prouoke snee-
sing and stayeth rume. These hitherto of the properties of the Marioram.

Of the ording, care, and secrets of the Marigolde.

Chap. 31.

The Marigold is a floure berry well knownen, and to bee found in most Gardens at this day, which renueth euery moneth, and is to be found as well in Winter as in Sommer. And this is named (of the Italians) the monethly floure, or floure of euery moneth. And this floure also of certain, is named the Husbandmans Diall, for that the same so aptly declareth the houres of morning and evening, by the opening and shutting of it. Also it is named the sunnes floure, for that after the rising of the Sunne vnto noone, this floure openeth larger and larger, but after the noone time, vnto the setting of the Sunne, it closeth and shutteth more and more: so after the setting of the Sunne, the floure is then wholly shut vp together. Marigold seedes be commonly sowne in a well laboured and dressed ground, and in the increase of the moone for so they prosper the better. And to haue them growe big, and to beate thicke and brode floures, you must remooue and set the young plantes often, and this alwaies in the increase of the Moone, and that you also put many seedes into one hole together, and water them in the springing vp. And if in the remoouing you set them thin they prosper the better.

The Phisicke helps.

The floures being steeped in vineger & salt, may be kept for two yeares. And now the floures drunk in wine, dooth comfort the stomack, procure an appetite to meat, consume the humours of the stomack, and heat a cold stomacke. And the rind of the root sodden in wine and drunke, doth both digest the euill humors, and helpeth the diseases of the liuer.

And the powder of the rind of the root, mixt with the iuice of Fenell, a litle wine, and a litle oyle, and boyled together into a thicknes, and a litle waxe put vnto the same, making therof an ointment, with the which annoint the milt or cold stomack, and it doth mightily helpe: and the iuice of the leaues dropped into the eares, doth slea the wormes: and the rinds brought to powder, and laid on euill pushes, dooth heale them: and the iuice of the hearbe and roote made in glister forme and applied, dooth helpe the palse members. And to women hauing their breastes swollen through the stay of monthly courses, let the floures of the Marigold, the Spikenard, and wine be ministred, which both doth aswage the swelling, and prouoke the Termes (as writeth *Matheus Saluatoris*) And against the pissing of bloud, take floures of the Marigold, and boile the same, and then drinke thereof, and it will stay in short time: and the water distilled of the floures, doth heale al the griefes of the cies, whether the same be caused of heat or of cold, and cleareth the cies: also it putteth away all griefes of the head. These hitherto of the properties of the Marigold.

Of the ording and care of the Lauender. Chap. 32

Lauender is an hearbe sweete in smelling, and at this day growing in moste gardens: of the which be two kinds, the one growing high, and sending forth a great sauour, which for that it giueth no lesse sauour then the Spike, is of the same named Spikenard: and the other, both in the largenes of the leafe and sauour, is lesse. And for that the same is occupied in baths, and in the washing of hands, for the sweetnes of smell, therefore of moste men named the Lauender. Also the first is named the Male, and the other the Female, as sundry authors write. And now the Lauender ioyneth to be set in an open and Sunny place, and in stony earth, for so it prospereth the better.

The Phisicke helper.

Lauender hath the vertue of heating & drying, but profiteth not vnto the digestion of meat: and now if any applyeth the Lauender often to the nose in smelling thereto, it dooth both

both comfort and cleare the sight: and who so boyleth Lauender in water, and that a shirt wet in the same, and after dried again be worne, no Louse after wil abide in that shirt, so long as the shirt keepeth the smell: and the floures haue singular vertues, especially to the helping of the Apoplexy. Also the floures steeped in wine, and after distilled, and of the same holden in the mouth, doth recouer the speech lost, proceeding of the Apoplexie: and Lauender hath many other vertues besides: for the same helpeth al the cold griefes of the braine, crampe, and gripings of the body, proceeding of cold: It helpeth also the stopping of the milt, heateth the belly, and sendeth downe the tearmes. And this hearbe (with the floures shred) ought to be distilled in Iune, which drunk vnto the quantity of two ounces, doth helpe the giddines of the head; & the like if the water be rubbed all ouer the head, and so let drie in of it selfe: and the same water in like quantity vsed, doth help the crampe, the Apoplexie, the astonishing and the trembling of the members, and handes. Also this water helpeth the palsie members, if they be often annointed and rubbed with it: and likewise helpeth the heauines in the mouing of the tongue, by drinking three ounces at a time: also it helpeth vlcers and paines of the teeth, if the same be often holden in the mouth: and the same water helpeth well the blistering of the mouth, if the mouth be washed with it. These hitherto of the properties of Lauender.

Of the ordering, and care, of the Spikenard. Chap.

The Spikenard groweth like vnto the Lauender, sauing that the leaues be thicker and bigger, and beareth also a longer stalk and bigger floures, which bee of purple colour like to the Lauender, and hath besides greater vertues. And now the Spikenard ioyneth to be set in a fat earth, well laboured and dressed, and in an open and Sunny place of the garden.

The Phisicke helps.

The Spikenard is hot in first degree, and dry in the second and causeth vrine. And if of the decoction of it be a plaster made & the same laid to the priuy place, staieth the superfluous

96 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

fluorous course of the tearmes, and taketh away the humors of womens places. And the Spikenard drunke with colde water, puts away the weaknes and trembling of the heart. And this Spikenard infused in Lie, & the head washed therewith, doth cause the haire to grow, & helpeth the sheeding of the haire. And the oyle of the Spike, well drawne by glasse, is marueilous sweet, and hath many vertues, & especially vnto the palsie members, if they be annointed therewith. And the said oile dooth ease the gout, and all other griefes of the ioynres. Also this oyle dooth help the swellings of the stomacke, the diseases of the liuer, the kidnies and the kings euill. The decoction of the Spikenard, helpeth against the palsie of the tongue, comforteth the sinews, and dryeth vp the moisture occupying the instrument of the tongue. And the floures of the Spikenard infused in wine, and set in the sun for a certaine space, in a narrow mouth glasse wel stopped, and after distilled by glasse in *Balneo Maria* with a so ft fire (& if the fresh floures may be had, then need you not to infuse them in wine) it is very precious, and being discretely vsed, helpeth all colde griefes as well within as without the bodie: also the griefes of the head and braine, if a linnen cloath dipped in the same, be applied to the nose: And the same water helpeth the rume, and distilling of the head: and this water drunk, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, doth helpe the Collicke passion, proceeded of colde: and it ceaseth the paines and giddines of the head, proceeding of a colde cause, if the noule of the head, & forehead, be annointed therewith. And this water helpeth the colde and palsie members, heating them, and putteth away the shaking of them. These hitherto of the properties of Spikenard.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of the white Lillie.

Chap. 34

The white Lillie, for the beautie and smell, is affirmed of Plinie, to be next to the Rose, and higher of growth then the most floures of the garden. And the increase of this Lillie is marueilous, in that one roote sendeth forth and yeeldeth

(102)

(for the moſte part) ſittie heads. And Palladius willeth the Lillie to be planted in the month of October, Nouember, and March, and that in a fat and well drefſed earth, and the heads ſet a ſpan or a foote a ſunder, like as is taught hereafter in the ſetting of Carlike. And to make them to beare purple flowers, gather (as Pliny teacheth) to the number of ten or twelue ſtalkes in the month of July, or when they floure, which binde together and hang in the ſmoake, and after that, ſlip off the leaues, making the ſtalkes naked, which ſteepe in red wine-lees, in the month of March (ſo long) vntill the knots of the ſtalkes haue ſufficiently drunke in, and appeare well coloured as a purple, and then ſet the ſtalkes into the earth, hauing the Wine-lees hanging both on the ſtalkes and rootes, and thoſe after ſhall ſend forth and beare purple flowers.

And Florentius writeth, that the Floures of Lillies will ſhewe red if that betweene the rinde and the ſmall heads growing about the roote, you poure of that fine powder of Vermilion, or elſe the powder of red lead, regarding that you harm not the ſmall heads growing about. And likewise dying them of any other colour, euen of the ſame colour will the floures growe: as if you liſt to haue either Greene or blew Lillies.

And to haue Lillies all the yeare, take the buds not opened, with ſome of the ſtalke, thoſe put into an new earthen pot not glaſed, and after ſtop cloſe the mouth of the pot, and when you ſhall need them, then ſet them on the ſide of a Baſon in the Sunne, and after they haue felt a while the warmth, they will open and ſpread abroad. And Anotolius writeth, that you may haue Lillies at diuers times of the yeare, if in the proper time of the yeare you ſet ſome of the heads twelue fingers deepe, other eight fingers deepe, and other but ſoure fingers, and thus in the growing vp will they beare floures at ſundrie times one after another. On this wiſe may many other floures be made growe, and to beare at diuers times.

The Phisick helps.

The white Lillie is hot and dry of qualitie, but the flours be of a temperate qualitie, and the oyle of Lillies doe greatly profit, by annointing on the belly, for that it heateth

impofsume women's places, & softneth the humours there hardned. The root sodden and laid on hot impostumes, dooth ripen them, and the roote roasted in hot embers and brused, and after mixed with Rosewater, and the same laide on the holy fire, doth heale the same if it be dayly vsed, and in the like sort laide on wounds, doth increase the flesh on them. The roote sodden and brused and mixed with Barrowes grease, or oile Oliue, and after laid on impostumes, dooth mightily soften them: & of the Lillie is made a good ointment on this wise, *Oyle of Lillie* Take of the white Lilly roots, of the roots of Bramker sine, and of marsh mallow roots of each a quarter of a pound, all these bruse together verie wel in foure measures of wine, and after seeth all in halfe a pinte of oyle, vnto a thicknesse, which straine through a linnen cloth, putting therto a little *of yew milke* waxe, and make thereof an oyntment, and annoynt it on the hard milt on the left side, and it will greatly helpe, for that it doth not onely soften the same, but putteth away the pains thereof. Item, the root of the Lillie sodden, and after boyled with oyle of Roses, and annoynted, doth heale burnings.

Wing Also, the root sodden in wine, and the same drunk in the euening at the going to bed, doth purge down-ward al noy-some humors of the body. And the leaues sodden in vineger and laid plaister-wise, doth heale woundes. And the roote roasted and mixed with hony, & that laid plaister-wise, doth heale loose & cut sinewes. These hitherto of the properties of the Lillie.

Of the ordering, and care, and secrets of the wood
Lillie. Chap. 35.

THe wood Lillie or Lillie of the balley, is a floure merua-lous sweete, flourishing especially in the spring time, and growing properly in woods, but chieflie in valeies and on the sides of hilles. But now for the great commoditie and vse knowne (of the floure) the same of late yeares is brought and planted in Gardens. And this hearb springeth vp with two leaues together, in shal you like the white Lillie, and in the middle springeth vp a small slender stalke: in the top of which growe sooth little small floures, in a manner white, and of a pleasant

pleasant smell. And the roote of it is white within the earth, but wrinkled without, and this Lillie loyeth to be set in a moyste ground and shadowey place of the Garden, for so it prospereth the better. The commodities of this floure, is alwaies had in the spring time.

The Phisicke helpes.

The wood Lillie is colde and moist in the second degree, and the floures be of greater effect then the hearbe, and the root passeth the floures in vertue. The flowers drunk in new wine, doth strengthen the heart, the brain, the liuer, & al the spirituall members (as they do name them) and of the same is aptly ministred vnto the panting of the heart, giddinesse of the head, the falling sicknesse, the Apoplexie and frenlines.

It doth also help those which be pained with a trembling of the heart, & prickings about the heart, and the members which shak & tremble. Moreouer, it doth also stop the passages of the Leapry beginning, that the same spread no further abroad, and it doth put away the scabs & ring worme, being annointed vpon, & the sooner if you wash them sundry times with the water. Furthermore, it asswageth the swellings of the stings of Bees, Wasps, and such like, by striking or annointing the water vpon them, and the water of the distilled wine, dooth put away the inflammation and mist of the eyes, by often vsing the same, and some distill this water for the aboue named diseases, on this wise.

First they take the floures & lay them to steepe for a month in new wine. & then taking them quite from the wine they will distill suet time in a Limbecke or bodye of Glasse, which wine so distilled, is more pretious then golde: for if any drinke of this water, with six grains of pepper & a litle of the Lauender water, he need not after feare the Apoplexy that month. And *Orho Brunfelsius* teacheth the making of the water on this wise. First take a gallō glasse filled with the best old wine, into which put a pound of floures, setting the same in the sun for 40. daies, after distil it in a limbeck of glas twice ouer, into which put a litle lauender water & pepper:

100 The sowing and setting of hearbes,

But other take old Wine, putting into the same a pound of the floures, and after forty daies standing in the Sunne, distill the same, into which put of the floures of Lauender & Rosemary, and some good spices, distilling it ouer againe, and then keep it as a most pretious water, well stopped in a narrow mouthed glasse: and a spoonfull of this water giuen to the patient at the point of death, dooth reuiue and prolong his life vntill his naturall time appointed, and it dooth comfort the braine, helpe h the Apoplexy, ceaseth the chollick passion, and helpeth the impostume hapning in the hinder part of the brain, also, this distilled water giueth a good memorie and ready wit, by annointing the hinder part or noule of the head and fore-head therewith. And the water of the floures onely distilled in the middle of the spring, and drunk to the quantity fixe ounces at a time, doth help those which be poysoned, and the same water helpeth the bite of a madde dog, the birth childe, comforteth the braine, the heart & the senses, and also putteth away falling sicknes, if the same be drunk for forty daies together. And the same water drunke helpeth the strangury, the pricking about the heart, inflammation of the Liuer, and doth stay the excesse of the month courses. These hitherto of the properties of the wood Lilly.

Of the ordering and care of the Floure-de-luce. Chap. 36

The Floure-de-luce, is a floure well knowne to all persons bearing leaues both bigger, flatter, and larger then that called the Sedge. And the roote and hearbe needeth no other diligence of setting, then to be planted in a drie earth, well laboured and dresed about the beginniung of March. And the rootes grow into ioyntes, scilde, and verie sweete smelling: which some plucke vp about the beginning of the Spring, and cutting them into round slices, after stich them thorough with a needle, and hang them vp to drie in the shadow.

And those rootes also be best commended, which bee verie short, verie hard somewhat red, sweete smelling, biting in the taste, and which in the beating of it in a mortar, causeth the person to sneeze.

The Phisick helps.

The roote of the Floure-delure, is only vsed in medicine, and is hot and dry of qualitie in the second degree: and it is very profitable against the cough, in extenuating those humours of the brest, which hardly are spit forth: and it also purgeth the grosse flegmatick and chollericke humours, & taking fixe drams of the roots, with water and hony, and the same drunke, prouoketh sleepe, staith the tearmes, & ceaseth the greefes of the body, and being drunke with Vinegar, doth help the diseases of the milt, the crampe, the colde shaking, which comes before the fit of an ague, and helpeth also the sheading of the Sperme: and druuk in wine, prouoketh monthly courses, and the decoction thereof applyed to the womans priuie-part, doth soften the hardnes thereof, and likewise open the stopping therof: & mixed with turpentine, by annointing, doth ease the greefes of the loynes and hips: and the poudersonely drawne vp into the nose, prouoketh sneezing, and cleanseth the head, and by chawing the roote in the mouth, dooth amend a stinking breath, and taketh away the strong sauour comming from the arm-holes, and the greene fresh roote boyled, and the same laid plaisterwise, doth soften wens, and other hard impostumes

And the pouders of the dry roote, mixed with honny, and the same thicke laid on Vlcers, dooth cleanse them: and the same applyed plaisterwise, doth draw out the bones in wounds and doth couer again the bare flesh, and the pouders of the root applyed plaister-wise to the forehead, doth greatly help the paine & griefe of the head: also, the pouders of the root, mixt with the pouders of white Nosewort, and two parts of hony, the same annointed, dooth take away the pimples of the face, & all spots caused by the Sun, and against the drop-sie, take a new laid Eg, pouring out the white and to the yelk put so much of the iuice of the roote as was the white, after set the same egge awhile in hot embers, which being sufficiently warm, sup off fasting in the morning, and the patient shall after send forth a merueilous abundance of water betweene the skinne and the sieg: and this hath bene often ex-

perienced. These hitherto of the properties of the Floure-deluce.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Pionie. Chap. 37

Pionie is an hearbe at this day well knowne, of the which be two kindes, the Male and the Female. It groweth after this manner. The leaues thereof be hard, from the neather part, and in colour like unto Horehound, and the rootes cleauing together like to the roots of Violets, and be reddish in colour, bearing bigge and purple floures, and resembling the forme of the Red Rose, hauing within the floure a yelow with seede like to the Rose, of which come the rods, in fashion like to Almonds, and grow together, hauing within red seedes, to the bignesse of the smaller Pease. And the stalk also, on which the seedes grow, beareth big reddish floures, which of some is named the blessed Rose: but the seede of mosse, is named the blessed Rose. And the seedes toy to be sown in a well dressed earth, and to be weeded about at the comming vp of the plants.

The Physicke helpes.

The roote Pyony heateth and dryeth in the second degree, and indureth for ten yeares in his efficacy, and hath also the vertue of comforting & cherishing the body, & causeth besides vrine, and purgeth the liuer and kidneis: which roote boyled in wine and drunk, doth purge the blood, and the roote of the piony is aptly ministred to women in childbed, being not thoroughly purged after the birth of child, for that the same causeth the comming downe of the tearmies, & purgeth them so without harme: and the quantity of an Almond is to be ministred at a time. Also, the root boyled in wine and drunke, dooth help the gripings of the belly, and sheading of the gall: and likewise it helpeth the pains of the kidneis & bladder, if the same bee with any stopping of the vrine, and a smoake made of the little fine branches of the root, and receiued into the nose, doth put away the Kings Euill, & the Piony root doth take away the black spots of the body: also, the roothanged about the necke, dooth put away the falling sicknes: as by a late practise was tried, that while
a Childe

a Childe had this root hanging about the necke, so long he was not griued with this discale, but when the same was taken from his neck, then was he vexed in like sort as before: and this did the male Piony roote, but the seeds doe not the like, and this may the male be known from the female. The Female Piony root boyled in wine and drunke, doth aptly purge women after the birth of child, & the same also doth the feedes of it. And in other matters the roots of both haue in a manner the like properties, and the field roote of the Piony, as *Monardus* writeth, worne about the necke, doth put away the vapours flying vp to the braine, & strengtheneth the brain: but the male only doth this, which beareth leaues like vnto the Walnut, hauing a white roote of a finger thicknes, and a spannel long, and certaine will, that the roote be digged vp in the waine of the moon, the thē being vnder the earth. These feedes of the Pyony doe help especially the termes of women, which send them down, & the dead yongling: which being drunke in wine, doth help the hard deliuerie of childe: also the feedes of Piony brused with Serwal, galingale, and sugar, of each a like weight, that same pouder taken morning and euening, doth put away poison, and gently looseth the belly, & ten or twelue feedes of the piony drunke in old wine, doth stay the superfluous courtes of women: and fiftene feedes drunk (of the black) in either water and hony, or wine, do help the night Mare, the strangling of the secrets and paines of the matrice. And the pouder of the seeds of piony ministred in meat & drink to children, doth send forth the stone beginning in them, and the pouder of the root of piony (ministred in wine) in which the root it selfe, and Mugwort shall be boyled, doth helpe the falling sicknesse, and the same pouder boyled in Castorie and drunke, helpeth the pallie. These hitherto of the properties of the Pyony.

Of the ordering and care of white Poppy. Chap. 38.

The white Poppy must bee sowne in hat and dry places, like as you doe other Pot-herbs. It is thought that this

herbe

hearb doth the better come by there, where as twigs or rods and shrubs of trees be burnt. But the Poppie and Dill, haue the like conditions and ordering of sowing, which the Char. will hath. And Palladius willett the Poppie to bee sowne in Semptember, in hot and drie places among the pot-hearbs, and yet in temperate and cold places, in the monthes of Ianuarie, Februarie, March and Nouember, either alone or with other hearbes.

The Phisicke helpes.

Poppie is cold and dry in the first degree: yet as touching the kinds, the white Poppy is cold & moist, and the blacke colde and drie, which doth more mortifie, and the seedes of the white gathered in the summer when they be ripe, may well be kept for five yeares, which haue the vertue of pro-
uoking or causing sleepe, and of aswaging, and now to pro-
uoke sleep, make a plaister of the white Poppy seeds brused, and mixed with the white of an Egge and womans milke, which apply hot to the forehead, & on the temples, and the women of Salerne giue to their Children the pouder of the white poppy with milke, to cause them to sleepe, and the seedes of the white Poppy, or the hearbe it selfe brused, & mixed with the oyle of roses, and this laide plaister-wise on vlcers proceeded of a bruse, doth draw out the great heate. And the same applyed to a hot liuer, doth much helpe: and the pouder of white Poppy seedes, mixed with oyle Oliue, and annointing the ridge of the backe with it, dooth take away the ache of the ioynts, and strengthneth them, and the iuice of the white Poppy mixed with the oyle of Roses, and annointing the feete therewith, doth put away the paine & ache of the hot gout. And the seedes of white Poppy beaten to pouder, and mixed with the oyle of Vyolets, and annointing the backe-bone therewith, dooth helpe both the burning of the ague, and heate of the liuer.

These hitherto of the properties of the white Poppy.

of

*Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the floure
Petilius. Chap. 39.*

THe floure named Petilius, which of the Frenchmen is named the little Indian eye, must be sowne in the midst of sommer, that in the ende of Harvest it may ware to a tree and bring forth floures vnto winter. It is also sowne in the seedes and set in slips: but the slips alwaies dye through the sharp colde of the winter (howsoever they be tender) and yet they refuse no ground. But they prosper best in a fat ground and shoote vp a mightie heighth, so that they appeare bushie, and spread into many branches, like a mightie tree or greate stalke resembling nearest to the sweet Briar tree.

*Of the ordering, and care, of the Velvet floure, or floure
Armonr. Chap. 40.*

THis floure (in a manner) neuer decayeth, but keepeth still his colour, and the floure also is eared, much like to an ear of cozne, very purple of colour and beautifull to behold, yet the same hath neither smell nor taste. And it properly groweth vp in the month of August, and endureth vnto Harvest. And when all other floures be withered and dead, and it also in a manner withered, then after the moistning with water, it dooth recover againe, and serueth to make winter garlands.

And this floure is sowne in many places in pots of earth, that growing from August, it may flourish vnto October, in which time bearing the floure, it is to be gently and tenderly gathered. And the floures so gathered, to be put into an Ouen (after the drawing of bread) and there gently dried: after which, the Maydens of Fraunce and of other Countries, do lay them charily vp and keepe them vntill wintertime to make garlands of them, and to hang them about the house.

And now of this floure, is heere sufficiently written, which although it bee not to be counted vpon amongst the smelling floures, yet for the beautie thereof, worthy to be sowne in Gardens.

The Physicke helps.

The hearbe named floure Armour, is of quality colde and dry in the third degree. And the floure of this boyled in wine and honny, and drunke, dooth help the perrillous Fluxe of blood, & the continuall paine of the often scouring of the belly, and staeth also the aboundance of the redde in women, and the white fluxes of the bellie. Also the same helpeth the spitting of blood, especially when any vessel or part in the Lungs or breast shall be broken: and the hearb sodden and laid plaister-wise on brused members, doth put away clotted blood, & healeth the places speedily: and the floures boyled in wine and drunke, doth heale the biting of any venemous wormes, and the Sciaticke: the distilling of the vrine, and a Rupture: and the pouder of this hearbe, to the quantity of three halpence in waight, drunke in white wine, doth stay the rume distilling from the head: and the hearbe sodden in wine, and the fundament fomented therewith, doth stay and take away the fluxe, and the piles: and in the same manner applied, dooth helpe the often desire vnto the stoole: And the root holden in the mouth, dooth cease the paine of the teeth: and the rootes brused and mixt with May butter, and of that made an ointment, which annointed on inflammations, doth aswage them. And the hearbe dooth keepe cloathes and garments from being harmed by worms and moathes. These hitherto of the properties of the velvet floure.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of the Gilliflowre. Chap. 41.

The Giliflowre for his sweetnes and beautie, is named of the Frenchmen the little eie, and of the Italians Gario-philon, for that it giueth a sweete smell and sauor, like unto Cloues. The seeds of the Giliflowre be seldome sown: but at the beginning of the spring and haruest: you may breake off slips from the root, and set them againe (being weathed at the end) in a halfe Tubbe or Pot, the earth therein made fat with rotten dung, and when the frostes approche and nippe them in the Winter time, then may they be remooued, and set vnder some couert, in places safe from the bitter cold.

And

And in faire dayes when as the sunne shineth warme, then set the pot or halfe tubbe abroad, that the plantes may so be comforted with the warmenelle of the Ayre, and you may sometimes suffer the plantes to be moistened a little with a gentle raine. And after those plantes being set in beds, doe spread in the sommer into small branches, then do the Gardners slip them off from the greater stalkes, about the feet of them before the Cups at the tops (where the floures appeare) be sprung out. And after this manner you may dresse and set out a whole bed with a fewe plantes, if you will. There be some which take Cloues and bruse them, lapping them about the stalkes nere to the rootes, and some make holes through with a bodkin, that the floures after sprung vp may fauour of them. And there bee some others which write, that by the often remoouing and setting of the plant, the floures spread the broader & pleasanter to the eye. And Cardanus writeth, that you may haue Gillyfloures (in a manner) vnto Hollontwe, if scraping of the bypper rinde of the plants, you set them againe with the rootes in horse dung, which so causeth them to beare faire floures in the winter, if you keep them from the cold aire. And certain new practitioners write that you may make one stalk to bring forth flours of many colours, if you take the seeds of euery colour of Gillyflours and put them altogether into a thin small reed, or terole of a sheep or goat, or els tyed vp in a thin woone linnen cloth, setting the same in earth well mixed with dung, which after the watering will cause the plant to come vp bearing the like number of colours in one stalk as ther were seeds sown. And there be some which write that if you mixe the Basil seeds with the Gillyfloure seeds, and vse them as before said, that they will spring together on one stalk: and the leaues of the floures put into a glasse of vineger, and set in the Sunne for certaine dayes, both make a pleasant vineger.

Of the ording and care, of the Strawberies. Chap. 42.

The Strawberrye is accounted among those heards that growe in the fieldes of their owne accorde. And the Berries be much eaten at all mens tables in the Summer, for the

108 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,
pleasantnes of them, which for a more delight in eating, they
dresse with wine and suger. The rehearsall of the forme of
this hearb needeth not, seeing the same is well knowne unto
all persons. And it aptly groweth in shadowey places, and
rather vnder the shadowe of other hearbes, then alone. And
the plantes set in Gardens, will growe unto the signes of a
Mulberry, if the earth before in the beds be well dressed, and
diligently tended of the Gardener. But the hearbe of it selfe
continueth not about a yeare.

The Phisicke helper.

The Berries be colde and moist in the third degree, and
the like is the hearb. And *Viganius* writeth, that the Straw-
berrie leaues be of a colde qualitie, so that the iuice of them
with the wine of the Pomgranets, and a little Rose-water
mixed together and applyed, doth helpe hot impostumes in
the beginning, and in the increase of them. And the Straw-
berry leaues vsed in a bath, doe greatly help the stone. And
for the mightie paines of the hips, take three or four hand-
full of the Straw-berrie leaues seething them in water and
after bath the pacient from the nether part vpward: which
so done, then annoynte the grieved place with this oynt-
ment following. Take the oyntment of marsh mallows,
one ounce, of hony halfe an ounce, of wax a dram weight,
all these mixe together, making thereof an oyntment: and this
doth not only help the ach of the hips, but softneth the mat-
ter hardned in them and prouoketh vrine. And the Berries
be profitable to men, in that they take away the vnnaturall
heat, & do especially proffit the chollerick persons, for that
they coole and moisten them. Also take of the iuice of the
Berries, and of Plantaine water, of each of them eight ounce-
s, of Rosed hony two ounces, of the iuice of the Mulber-
ries one ounce, of Albigræci & of Balaustia, of each a dram,
all these mix together, washing the mouth therewith, which
so helpeth the impostumes of the throate. And this hearbe
eaten with meate, doth help such as are diseased in the milke
and

and the like dooth the iuice of the hearbe drunke: and the same iuice giuen with white pepper, dooth helpe the short winded: and the Berries also doe stay thirst, profit the stomacke, especially of the chollericke. And the decoction of the roots drunk, doth qualifie the Liuer, being taken morning and euening: and the like doth the decoction of the heatbe and root together, both qualifie the heat of the liuer, and cleanse the raines and bladder: and the best distilling of the Berries, is when they beripe, but not ouer soft, and those which grow in the hilly woods be the better: and now the distilled water drunk, or mixt with somewhat and so drunk, doth qualifie the vnnaturall heat, and stayeth thirst: and the same water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, dooth helpe the Leaprie, and purgeth the blood, by drinking of it in wine, or otherwise eaten with bread, and cleanseth the foule scabbe of the bodie: and in the same manner drunk, dooth helpe the liuer, the kings euill, looseth the breast, comforteth the heart, purgeth the blood, and preuaileth against the stone in the loyns, kidneis and bladder. Also it helpeth vicers of the throat, the grieuous swellings of the same, and the stincke of the mouth, if any gargell the same in the mouth or throat: and drunke of women, doth cleanse them, and send downe their tearmes: also it healeth all filthy corruptions of the legs, if they be washed morning & euening with the same, or with linnen wet and applied: and it cureth filthy wounds, if they shall be washed in the same water, or vsing to drinke of the water: also it putteth away the swelling of the face, if the face be sundry times washed therewith: and mixed with salt, and distilled once ouer againe, it doth both coole and cleare the eies. These hi herto of the properties of the Strawberries.

Of the ordring, and care, of the Borage, and also of the

Englosse Chap. 43.

Borage is sowen in the moneth of August, and September, and best sowen in the moneth of Aprill, either a-

110 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

lone in beddes, or about the borders of new beddes of other hearbes. And it cannot aptly be sown in any other time of the yeare, yet may the same plant after the coming by be very well removed in any time (in a manner) of the yeare, and the seedes ought to be gathered but halfe ripe least they other wise fall out of the huskes. And the hearbe with the seedes, after the plucking by, must be laid together on a heape, for the space of two or three daies, that the seeds may so come unto their full ripenesse. And when convenient time so serueth, then you may rub the seedes soorth on a linnen cloath, for other wise you cannot aptly come by them: which seedes thus had, may well be kept for two yeares. And the Buglosse, which the Romaines name the Dre tounge, and with vs Langde. beere, hath the like order in sowing, and using of the seedes, which the Borage hath. And yet some write, it ioyeth to be sown in an open and Sunny place, and that the earth be well laboured and dressed before, for so it prospereth the better. And the Buglosse also for his singular vertues, deserueth in all gardens to be sown is a right necessary hearbe.

The Physick helper.

Borage, which of Galen and Dioscorides is named the Buglosse is hot and moist in the first degree. Which the self same Galen witnesseth (writting) that the Buglosse is of a moist & temperate hotnesse, so that beeing put into wine in the drinking, causeth gladnesse and mirth: and the Borage boiled in wine, and so drunk: dooth engender good blood. And those which be pained with the giddines of the head, let them take the iuice of this hearbe, and mixing the same with suger, drinke therof, which doth thoroughly help the same. And the iuice of the hearbe with Senec, if the same shall be mixed with the Sirope of Borage, and drunke morning and evening, doth increase the senses and putteth away melancholie. And the raw floures eaten, doe cause good blood, and put away the trembling of the heart; & they worke the like effect, if the floures be drunk in wine. And the sirope of Borage is vsed against the kings euil. And the floures dried and kept.

kept but a yeaere, do serue all those diseases, which the hearb it selfe helpeth: and the floures put to oyle Oliue, and set in the Sun for a time, with the which annointing the stomack and region of the heart, it doth greatly comfort. And the distilled water (in *Balneo Maria*) of the hearb and root drunke morning and euening, to the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, doth put away the gripings & swellings of the belly, helpeth the bloody fluxe, and the hardnes offetching winde: and the same in like order drunk, dooth comfort the heart and braine, and increaseth memory and witte, purgeth the blood, and putteth away frenzies: and linnen cloathes wet in that place, and laid to any place, where either Spider or waspe hath venomed, dooth quickly take away the paine thereof: and red Sarcenet wet in the water and laid to the cics, dooth take away the paine thereof, and cleareth them. And the distilled water of the floures drunke, doth help all the aboue-said diseases which the hearb dooth: yet the same is the more precious, for that it dooth purge the blood, putteth away melanchollie, and marueilously purge the heart. And the same water helpeth all distillations of the head, by drinking euery euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time: and it also greatly preuaileth against the burning Agues and the laundize, and cooleth moreouer the liuer, either by drinking, or wetting clothes in the same, and so applied often on the region of the Liuer.

And now the Buglosse hath the same vertues which the Borage hath, and is hot and moist in the first degree: For the Buglosse also being drunke in wine, doth help such diseased in the Lungs, troubled with a dry cough, and boiled in water and honny mixed together (as *Galen* writeth) doth help the coughing through the roughnesse of the throate. And the Buglosse steeped in wine, and tempered with Mellicrate, and after drunke, dooth cause mirth: and often drunke in Wine, dooth purgethered choller, proceeding of ouermuch heat, and in like manner helpeth the Cardiaack passion, and dooth also put away the hurtfull humours of the Lungs.

And

*moellm
ho fact*
bloody fl
found in his vial
11)
And the iuice drunke with warme water, doth take away the swelling of the feet: also the wine in which the Buglosse shal be steeped, drunke, doth maintaine a good memorie, comfort the heart, and ingendreth good blood: and the distilled water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time with suger, doth helpeth those diseased with the bloody flux, the hardnes of fetching wind and the bestraught of minde, or hauing a weake braine: and the same water helpeth against al hot sicknesses: as y agues, the diseases of the Lungs, the liuer and the milt, it purgeth also the blood, & putterh away the pricking of the hart and stomacke: and the said water of Buglosse, putteth away the laundize, clenseth the Leapry, and scab, & mittigateth the distillings of the head: and it ceaseth the paine and burning of the eies if linnen clothes dipped in the water, be applied either to the forehead or eies: and in the same maner applied, it dooth take away the ringing or sound of the eares. And the floures of the Buglosse distilled in *Baineo Maria* doe yeild a precious water to comfort the heart and braine, being drunk either with pouder of pearles, or with the confection of *Manus Christi*, made with pearles. These hitherto of the properties both of Borage and Buglosse.

Of the ordning and care of Rosemary. Chap. 44.

The Rosemarie is a plant of a pleasant sauour, which for the beautie and smell of it, is set (at this day) in gardens. And the gardeners also in our time, doe make diuers seates, some like to benches and other proper formes (as liketh them best, to be delighted at) in their beds, running of length and of height. And the same plant also in medicine hath a marueilous efficacy. And Dioscorides nameth it the garland rose for that in time past they made garlands thereof. And it is named also of the Greeke Authours Libanotis, for that the leaues and root of the Rosemarie, doe sauour likest vnto the Frankencense. And the Rosemarie hath a hoarie and hard stalke downeward, and in the vpper part the leaues of it bee sharp, and is both greene aboue, and white vnder the leaues. And the floure of it is blewish, like to the Lauender, and hath

a sweete smell, saouring like to turpentine or frankencense. And it hath also a blacke roote, full of little branches shooting out of it, and it may be set in any ground, being well laboured and dressed before: but it rather is feth to be planted in a rotten earth, and dunged with sheepes dung.

The phisicke helpes.

Rosemary heateth and dryeth in the second degree, and hath the vertue of softning, digesting, cutting asunder and cleansing. And now the Rosemary with Harts tongue steeped together for a night in wine, and after drunke, doth put away the Kings euil: and the iuce both of the root and hearb mixed with honny, and drunk, doth help the dulnes of sight and purgeth the grossenes of humors. And the root brused and mixed with hony, and laid on vicers, doth speedily soften them: and the root with Pellitory boyled in wine, and drunke, doth soften the belly, and putteth away the paine therof: and the same also preuaileth against the biting of venomous beastes and wormes: also in the same manner tempered with Mug woort, doth cause vrine, and prouoketh the tearmes of women: and the Rosemary floures tyed vp in a faire linnen cloth & boyled in wine, which drunke morning and euening, do put away the griefes of the body, but especially helpeth the griefes of the pappes: and the floures being brought to pouder and drunke in warme wine, dooth make merry the minde, and comfort nature and the blood, & preserve many also from diseases which might otherwise happen: and the coles made of the wood or stalkes burnt, and the same brought to pouder & tyed vp in a linnen cloth, & rubbing the teeth therewith doth make the teeth white, and flea the wormes in them: and if he which is diseased with the rewme, make a sinoake of the barkes, and do holde his head ouer it, it speedily stayeth the same. And the Rosemary boyled in water and drunke, either alone or mixed with wine, dooth cause an appetite to meate. And he which is mightily dry through a greate heate, let him mixe the wine of the sower Pomgranets, with that water (being colde) in which the Rosemary leaues shal be boyled, and drink of the same,

114 The sowing and setting of hearbes,

same, & out of doubt it will help him: and the powder of Rosemary flours eaten in reare poached eggs, doth greatly strengthen nature and amendeth the blood: and the wine made of Rosemary, if you drinke a good draught thereof morning and evening, dooth cleanse the blood, prouoketh a desire to meate, expelleth all the inner humors, and helpeth a greater weaknes: and the Rosemary boyled with wilde Penniroyall or Mints, in wine and oyle oliae, & that any diseased doth annoint him therewith, doth both cause him to sweat & helpeth the drop sicke. And the Rosemary boyled in wine, with Hearbgrace & a little pepper, & drunk, doth help the falling sicknes: also the Rosemary boyled in wine with Pellitorie, doth help the greatnes of the Euuella, if the same be gargaled in the mouth: and Rosemary with the flours boyled in wine and that drunk warme morning and evening, & neither eating nor drinking three houres after, doth help the Kings euill, the hard fetching of the breath, openeth the pipe of the lungs, causeth easie spitting forth, helpeth digestion, & ceaseth the gripings of the body, & mundifieth the blood. And the flours boyled in the strongest vineger, and laid plaisterwise to the Nauill, doth stay shortly after, the great fluxe of the belly. These hitherto of the properties of the Rosemary,

Of the ording and care, of the hearb German der. Chap. 45.

The hearb German der, which of the Latines is called the little loue Oke of the earth, is a plant very short: which as Dioscorides describeth is not in the growth aboue a span high, bearing small leaues, dented in like the Oke leaues, bitter in taste, bearing purple floures and those very small, and it also groweth of it owne accorde in rough and stony places: but now this hearb is planted in Gardens. And the seedes ought to be gathered when the hearbe beareth floures, which is about the end of May, as Galen and Micer do write.

The Phisicke helps.

The hearb hath the vertue of heating & drying together, vnto the third degree, & taketh away the hardnes of the spleen or milt, causeth vrine, moueth the teares, helpeth the drop sicke (& this) if in the begining of the sicknes, the patient drinke of the

Wine of Rosemary

Drop sicke

Falling sicknes



Of the decoction of the hearb thrice a day: and the hearb bearing the flours doth greatly help brused members, if they be washed with the same, or drunk of the decoction of it: and the hearb be brused and laid on Fistulaes in the corners of the eyes, or if oile made of the hearb be dropped into them, doth forthwith heale them, so that the patient be of a coide complexion, but being a person of hot and dry complexion, this helpeth not: and the hearb sodden in wine and drunk, doth put away the Kings euill: and the Germander sodden in wine with Fenell seeds and Seene, doth greatly helpe the stopping of the liuer and milt: and if Parcelly seedes be put thereto, then the same helpeth the strangury, and the stone. And the hearb boyled in wine & laid on the pallie members doth help them: The hearb also brused with oile olive, and laid vnto wounds doth heale it: and the Greene hearb boyled in conduit water and drunk, doth helpe the crampe and palfie: and the same decoction drunk, doth helpe the cough, the hardnes of the milt, the straightnes of making water, & the water betweene the skin & flesh. And this hearb sodden in wine & drũk, doth preuaile against poy sons: & the same laid plaister wise doth help the bite of venomous beasts and wormes: and the hearb boyled with wine and vineger, and drunk, doth help the hardnes of the milt, an olde cough, and olde vlcers, being mixed with honny and so drunk: and the poulder of the herb ministred with hony, doth flea the worms in the body: and against the rewme, heate the poulder of the hearbe in a linnen bag, and apply it on the head, which is a speciall remedy. This herb also helpeth the blistering of the mouth, if it be washed with the decoction thereof thrice a day: also it helpeth the small scab, if making an ointment with the hearb and barrowes greace, you annoint the skin. These hitherto of the properties of the Germander.

Of the ordning, and care of the blessed Thistle. Chap 46.

Cardus Benedictus, or the herb named the blessed Thistle, is verie wel knowne, and of great vse in medicine, and hath a speciall efficacy against poysons, the plague, and distempers of the hart. And both the name and forme of the hearb

116 The sowing & setting of Hearbes,

Do declare it to be a kinde of thistle, although there hath bene great controuersie among the ancient phisitions, of the true description of this hearbe. And Ruellius, seemeth more exactly and better to iudge of this hearb and come nearer to a truth, who described the blessed Thistle to haue a big stalke and prickling, like to Endiue, with rough and crisped leaues, and bearing a yellowe floure, and delighteth to be sowed in a fat earth, in the garden.

The phisicke helpes.

The Blessed Thistle hath the nature and qualitie of opening the stopping of members, of peircing & causing vrine. This hearb in the eating, doth help the paines in the head & lungs, & causeth good hearing, & sharpneth the wit & memory, & putteth away giddines: also it comforteth the brain and sight, not only by eating, but also by anointing the eies therewith. And when the iuice of the herb can not be had, then may you vse the pouder, or the hearb it selfe dried, and stieped in water, & so wash the eies therewith. And the iuice dropped in the eies, dooth helpe the blood shotten in them: and the hearbe stayeth the bleeding at the nose and mouth, if it be applied to either place: and the pouder of the hearbe mixed with honny and eaten, doth cause the person easilier to spit forth fleame & grosse humors, and it helpeth a weak stomacke and causeth an appetite to meate, and softneth the hart: also it consumeth euill blood & ingendreth good: and the hearb boyled in wine, and drunk, doth cause the person to sweat, but being boyled in water, & drunk, doth consume the euill humours and preserue the good. Further this hearbe eaten, doth strengthen the palse members, and healeth the blistred lungs. And the hearb boyled or drunk rawe with wine, doth breake the stones: and the hearbe boyled in the vrine of a healthfull man Childe, and drunke doth helpe the dropisie and plague, and breaketh all impostumes, and mai-streth the canker, and falling sicknes: and the pouder of this hearbe drunk, vnto the quantity of a dram, before twelue houres be past of the disease felt, doth both expell and heale the plague: and the downe comming of the floures, laid on

cuts and new wounds, doth heale them without paine. And the hearbe chawed in the mouth, doth cure the stinke of the breath: and the hearbe boyled in wine, and drunke hot, about a quarter of an houre before the comming of an Ague, and the patient afterward well couered with cloathes in the bed, doth helpe all Agues, both hot and cold: and the pouder of the hearb drunke with hot wine and the distilled water, recouers the patient in short time: and against any poyson receiued by the mouth, when the same hapneth, drink the pouder and hearbe, or the iuice of the hearbe, or the distilled water, and after couered with cloathes, sweat well for the space of three houres: Lastly the pouder of he hearbe, either eaten or drunk, doth help the stich of the side. These hitherto of the properties of the hearbe named the blessed Thistle.

Of the ordering, and care of the hearb Wormwood.

Chap. 47.

VWormwood is an hearbe so well knowne thorough out England, that it needeth the smaller instruction of the forme of it: yet be there three kinds of wormwood, described both of Plinie and Dioscorides. And the first is the Romaine Wormwood, which also of the Countrie is named Ponticke, in which the best groweth: and the leaues of the same the ancient Physitions vsed to minifter in figs to Children, to abate the bitterness therof. And the second is the Sea Worm wood, which also is named Siphinum, the seeds of which the Physitions appoint to the killing of wormes in the bodie: and of this they name them (at this day) the seeds against the wormes, or worme-seeds. And the third is that which is named Santonicum, growing in Fraunce, beyond the Alpes. And this although it be lesse then the others, yet it is far gentler in the bitterness: and the same wormewood also at this day, is sown in beds in many gardens, and the yong leaues also mixed in sallets, vnto the great commodity of the stomacke and liuer: and the wormwood ought to be gathered in the month of July at what time the seeds appear, and to be dyed in the shadow.

The Physicke helps.

The wormewood is hot in the first degree, and drie in the third, astringent, and endued together with a bitter and sharpe qualitie, and the iuice of the hearbe is much hotter. Now the iuice being drunke for ten daies together, vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, and tempered with Suger, doth helpe the laundize, the water betweene the skin, and drieth forth many noy some humors of the Liuer and milt. And the wormewood doth comfort both the stomacke, and moueth an appetite vnto meat, and helpeth also those diseases proceeding of a stopping, like as the drop sic, & such like diseases: and it killeth the wormes in the belly, and doth mightily expell them, by weaing a plaister prepared after this manner: First take foure ounces of wormewood, halfe an ounce of *Euphorbium*, one ounce of the Harts horne burnt, and to these mixe an ounce of a Hare gaule, and hony, which prepare in plaister-forme, and apply vnto the belly: and he which is sicke of an Ague a long time, let him drinke the iuice of Wormewood tempered with Suger, which dooth helpe the Ague in short time after: and if any be so pained with the head-ache, that he cannot sleepe nor rest, let him cause wormewood to be finely bruised and boyled well in water, and put after into a fine linnen cloath, apply the same gently about the head, and it will both remoue the beating paines, and cause the patient to sleepe soundly: and boyled in wine, and drunke each day vnto the quantity of four ounces at a time, doth preserue the person, that the bloud putrieth not in the bodie: and the Oyle of wormewood dropped in the eares, doth restore the hearing. And wormewood boyled in vinegar, doth amend the euill sauour of the mouth, if it be washed therewith: and the drinking thereof dooth put away the swellings of the milt: and wormewood boyled in oyle Olive, and annointed about the brest, doth both helpe the weakenes of the stomacke, and the mallice of the Liuer. And the iuice of wormewood, boyled with the iuice of Borage, and the floures of Centurie, in Goats whay and drunke doth help those diseased of the Ague, and griels of the milt.

And

And wormewood sodden in Lie, with Sothernwood, dooth helpe the sheading of the haire. Item for rawnes of the stomack, take wormwood & hearbgrace, of each a like waights, and to these mix a little pepper, beating them together, and boiling them in wine, drink of the same, which doth greatly comfort the stomacke, & purgeth it. And worm-wood laid among clothes, doth driue away moths: also the often smelling vnto worm-wood procureth sleepe, or layning the same vnder the bolster, the party not knowing therof. These hitherto of the properties of wormewood.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Sothernwood. Chap: 48.

Of the sothernwood be two kinds, as plinie and Dioscorides write, the one growing on the plaine, the other on the mountaine: and so the one is taken to be the female, and the other the male: both hauing a bitternes like to the wormwood. And now the female (after Dioscorides) shooteth vp in stalkes like a kind of tree, and for that named of many, the little Cipresse tree, bearing little white leaues about the small bowes or branches. and those finely parte, like the sea wormwood, and hauing big yelowie berries in the top, whose sauour yeeldeth somewhat vnpleasant and bitter in taste. And the male beareth not so white leaues, being branched with a smal seede and leafe like to the fennell, shorter of growth, bearing in the top a yelowish floure, and hauing the like berries, hanging thicke together on the top, and sauouring somewhat strong, and with one root growing neere in the earth. And neither of them can abide the long colde of the winter, but that it withereth, and is much harmed also by the long heate of the Sunne when the same spreadeth it selfe in the top. And Theophrastus writeth that it better prospereth, being set with the roote, or in braunches slipped off, then sowne in the seed.

The Phisick helps.

The Sothernwood is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second: but *Aegina* writeth, that it beareth & drieth in the third degree & hath the vertue of digesting, and cutting asunder although it doth a little bind: and now the Sothernwood burned and brought to powder, & tempered with the

Oyle

For a yow Oyle of Raddiſhe, and with the ſame annointing the balde place of the head, do cauſe the haire to grow: and the iuce of the hearb mixed with oyle of Dill, dooth the like, in cauſing haire to grow in any place of the body: and the ſame hearb doth diſſolue impoſtumes and flegmaticke humours, being boiled in a pot with the kernels of Quinces, and ſo applied: and the iuce preſſed out of the Sothernwood, and drunke with wine dooth defend the perſon from the apoplexie: the iuce anointed on paſſie members, dooth helpe them. And the Sothernwood boiled with oyle Oliue, and annointing the head therewith, doth take away the vntemperate coldnes of the head. The hearb boyled with parſely and ſuger, and drunke, doth both breake and expell the ſtone of the kidneis and bladder: and the oyle of Sothernwood annointed beneath the nauil, doth cauſe vrine: and the hearbe drunke in wine, helpeth againſt poiſons, and againſt the biting of venemous beaſtes or wormes: and if any often drinke of the root of this hearb, it killeth the wormes in the body: alſo if the iuce be mixed with a little milke, and drunk, it dooth the like: againſt the colde griefes of the Lungs, and breſt, this hearbe is profitably giuen, being ſodden before with Iſope in wine and water, and ſweetned both with Licoras and Suger: and the hearbe bruifed with oyle and ſalt together, and laid on the Pulſes of the hand, is a profitable remedie againſt the Ague: and a branch of the hearbe (as *Plinie* writeth) laid vnder the bolſter, doth mooue the deſire to the veneriall act. It doth alſo greatly auaille againſt al bewitchings, which by eating therof is hindred. Theſe hither-
to of the properties of the Sothernwood.

Of the ordering, care and ſecrets of the hearbe

Sage. Chap. 49.

The hearbe Sage is ſo common, that the ſame is growing in euery Garden, and is either ſowen in the ſeedes, or ſet in ſmall ſtippes broken off, and wreathed at the end, in the moneth of October, Nouember, February and March, in well laboured and dreſſed ground, and deſireth alſo to be couered about with Bucke aſhes, ſo ſo it prospereth, and

con-

commeth the faster forward, and iogeth besides in a Sunnie and open place, although it may well abide the colde of all the winter through, without any couer or defence ouer it.

And it iogeth to be set by the hearbe Rue or Yearegrace, and not in dunged earth, but in colde earth mixed with clay.

The Phisicke helps.

Sage helpeth in the first degree, and drieth in the second, and the leaues (for the vse of medicine) may well bee kept for a yeare, and now the sage being sodden in wine, & drunk doth stay the excessiue fluxes: and the tearmes staying, it draweth them down, but to much running, it stayeth them. And the Sage sodden with Worme-wood, and then drunk, dooth stay the bloody fluxe: and the leaues and stalkes sodden together and drunke, doth prouoke vrine, and the tearmes. And the sage sodden in wine, and either drunk or applied plaister-wise, doth help the palsie, and sod in water helpeth the gout and falling sicknes, & especially the dropping of the vrine, and being drunk, & applyed plaisterwise to the blley, & a fomentation applyed with the licour of the decoction of the hearb, doth help the strangurie or bloody fluxe, and clenseth the matric. And the sage boyled in wine with the herb named *Tauxus Barbatus*, and sitting ouer the hot broth of the same decoction on a close stoole, dooth send vp the fundament fallen down. The iuice of Sage mixed with hony, and washing filthy woundes therewith, doth so cleanse them, and the leaues and stalks sodden in wine & washing with the same, doth helpe the itch of the priuities: and sitting ouer the hot broth of the decoction of the hearb doth take away the itch about the fundament, and the Sage water (distilled at the time of bearing the floures) drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time, doth amend the defaults of the Liuer, putteth away the cough, and sendeth forth the dead yongling, and this water doth greatly helpe shrunke and astonished members, if they be bathed therewith. This water drunke, dooth help the paines of the sides, the shaking of the hands, and the palsie, and the like if they be bathed with the water.

And the water drunk with wine, doth procure an appetite to meat, and strengthneth the stomacke, and womens places, and the same water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of three or four ounces at a time, doth breake any inward impostum, comforteth the braine, and taketh away the distilling of the head, comforteth a hot liver, and putteth away frenzies, and the water of sage, with peacocks dung, dooth stay the fresh bleeding wound, being bound about with mosse or Cotten. These hitherto of the properties of the hearb Sage.

Of the ordering and care of the Purselaine. Chap. 50

Purselaine may be sowne in any time and season in a manner: yet the same sooner springeth vp, when the warme season beginneth as in the Monthes of Aprill, May and June. And the seedes may either be sown alone in earth well mured with powder dust, or among other hearbes if you wil, for they will prosper and come vpp by growing among Onions & leeks. Also they desire to be sown in a fat ground, for by that means they grow and ware the bigger, and where the seeds shal once be sowne, there will they euerie yeare after come vp of their owne accord, especially being suffered to growe to a big turffe and ripenes. The Purselaine is much harmed by a long drought unlesse it be otherwise holpe with the often watering in that season. And note that the Purselaine growing vnder the shadow of trees will come to no turffes.

The Physicke helpes.

Purselaine is cold in the third degree, and moist in the second, and the fresh and greene more allowed then the dry which hath then little vertue. And now the eating of the greene Purselaine doth helpe a hot stomacke, and the swelling of the mouth of the stomack: and the Purselaine boyled & holden in the mouth, doth cease the paine of the teeth and a plaister made of Purselain, & laid on hot vlcers where it is found that the matter in them purrifieth, doth helpe the same, and the like: if the impostume shall be hot, and that it wandreth from one member to another, and the Purselaine taketh away the vlcers of the head, if the same be brused & temp-

tempered with wine, and the head washed therewith.

And the often eating of it raw, doth fill the stomack with clammy humors, but eaten raw with vinegar, dooth put away the burning ague, and brused with Barly meale, and after applyed hot to the stomacke, dooth qualifie the heate therof, and the eating of Purslaine dooth soone stay the monthly courses without harme, and the Purslaine brused and mixed with barly Flowre, & the same laid plaisterwise doth cease the paines of the head, quallifieth the heat of the eyes, staieth the fluxe of the belly, and especially the bloody scouring, and strengthneth besides the raines and bladder, and the iuce drunke doth help the burning ague, killeth the wormes in the belly & helpeth the spitting of blood in the body, and against the costiveness of the belly, seeth the hearb in water with prunes, and the same eate together, and after drinke the water: and *Auicenn* writeth, that the Purslaine dryeth vp waters of propertie, if they be annoynted with the iuce therof, and the hearb brused and laid plaisterwise, doth helpe the holy fire, and the hearbe holden vnder the tongue, doth put away thirst. These hitherto of the properties of Purslaine.

Of the ordering, and care of Penny-royall. Chap. 51

Penny-royall is an hearb well knowne to all persons, and iogeth in the growing with *Pep* and *Spints*, but the female woorketh the greater effect (as *Pliny* writeth) and beareth a purple floure, but the male a white floure. And now *Palladius* willetth the Penny-royal to be set in the beginning of *March*, in earth well laboured and dressed, without any dung at all, and rather in a moist place where it most iogeth.

The Phisicke helps.
The Penny-royall is hot and drie in the third degree, & doth also heat & decoct mightely, so that it maketh the person eating & drinking therof, the easier to cast & spit forth the clammy matter from the lungs and brest, and Penny-royall is then to be gathered, when it beareth the floures, for that they may after be kept for two yeares, and against the itch of the body, boyle the Penny-royall in faire water,

and washing the itching places therewith, it doth speedilye heale them, and sodden in wine and drunke, it dooth send downe the monthly courses, and the like the after burden: also being bruised with hony and salt, and that laid plaisterwise, doth helpe the palsie and broken members. And the Penny-royall brused and eaten with hony, dooth helpe the hardnes of fetching the breath, and against the gripings of the bowelles, take two partes of wine and a third part of the hearb boyled together, and so drinke the same, and hee that is dayly mooued to much sleepe, let him take the fresh Penny royall, and holde the same vnder the tongue, and in the mouth, and thus often vsing the fresh hearb, shal so driue away desire of sleepe, and the pouder of the Penny-royall drunke in wine for two daies together at night going to bed doth helpe the greefe of the liuer and lunges. And the pouder of the hearbes or seedes taken in an Egge, doth help the rawnes of the stomacke and the casting of it, and if any by ouer much bleeding is bereft of minde: let this hearb be applied with vinegar to the nostrils, and it will both refresh and restore the person, and the teeth robbed with the pouder of this hearb, doth put away the greefe and paine of them and the hearbe brused and tempered with Saffron and annointed, doth help the euill vlcers of the body, and especially those which arise about the nailes of the fingers, & the hearb brused & applied plaisterwise, doth assuage the swelling of the milt, and drunke warme in wine, dooth help the dropping of the bladder, and the same wine with the hearb boyled in oyle, & applied to the belly, dooth work the same effect, and the Penny-royall sodden in wine and applied twice or thrice to the nostrils, doth helpe the rume and distilling of the head. And the wine of the decoction of the hearb and dry figges drunk, doth help the colde cough, proceeding of calamitie and warry humors. These hitherto of the properties of Penny-royall.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Artichokes. Chap. 52.

The Artechocke groweth in the head like vnto the Pimpernelle, which ought to bee sown or set in the earth in March:

March: Palladius willeth the earth before to be well dunged and laboured, for that it best inioweth in a fat ground. And the seedes set in fast ground, doe greatly auaille against the casting bp of the Mole and other beastes, in that they cannot so easily make holes in the ground. And Palladius also willeth, that when your beds be thus dressed and prepared in a readinesse, that then to set the seedes in the earth halfe a foote a sunder, and this especially ought to be done in the encrease of the Moone: and that holding the seedes with thre of your fingers you set them so deepe in the earth, (as vnto the first ioynts) and couer them lightly with earth, and water them often, if a hot season insue, for by that means they send forth boty tenderer and fuller fruits, as Varro writeth. And when the young plants be somewhat sprung bp, then ought they dayly to bee weeded, and their withered leaues plucked away and to bee well dunged about with soze of ashes, after the minde of Columella: for that the same kinde of dung (as he writeth) is aptest, and best agreeth to this hearbe. And beware you set not the seedes turned bp side down in the earth, for on such wise they will send forth feeble, crooked, and very small Artichokes, as writeth Palladius. And the Artichokes will grow without prickles, if that the sharpe endes bee pressed downe, or made blunt by rubbing them on a stone, before the setting in the earth. And certaine writers affirme, that if the upper skin of the roote of the Lettuce be pared off, and that the root afterward be thred into verie small peeces, and that into each peece cut a seede be put, and so couered in the earth, of such a depth aboue said, which after will grow without prickles: and they will grow sweete and pleasant, if that the seedes (thre daies before) be steeped in any sweet smelling licour, & after the drying in the ayre, set so deep in the earth as aboue is said. For by that meanes they send forth Artichokes of the same taste (which the licour was) in which the seedes were soaked: and thus they will sauour and taste of the Baies, if that you steepe the seedes with Bay-leaues, or put of the seedes into Bayberries, and set them into the ground. And a practise may be vsed (if you will) in the ordering on such wise also

their seedes. And to make Artichokes growe sweete in tast, insule the seedes befoze, in either milke with hony, or in water with suger, or else in pleasant wine: and after the drying, set them orderly in the earth, and many doe couer the leaues well with earth in the beginning of winter, to cause them to turne white, and take away the bitternesse, and the better to serue with meats in winter time. And Palladius affirmeth of experieuce, that the yong plants of the Artichokes set among yong wheate in the end of October, to grow vp with the same will the better prosper, then by the setting of them in beds alone. And certaiue ancient men will, that the whole plantes be plucked vp, with the endes of the rootes left in the earth, or cut off in the ends with some sharpe hook, and that those roots so cut or broken off, be dipped in dung, and set againe in earth, well laboured and dressed with old dung, a thre foot a sunder, for the better increas of the plants. And if neede so require, for the heat of the season, then to water the plants, vntil they haue sufficiently taken root in the ground, and the artichokes are not to be gathered altogether, for that they ripe not all at one time, but ripen alwaies the one after the other, and they also are then to be gathered, when they haue as yet flours in the nether part, round about like vnto a Garland, and not when all the floures be fallen off; then they bee wooser, and euerie yere the yong plants ought dayly to be plucked vp from the old, for feare of hindring the yeeld of the old, and the young new set in other places further a sunder: and there bee some Authoꝝ which will, that the young Plants bee plucked vp, with some part of the roote. And those plants which you preferue for seeds, ought first to be cleansed from al the yong ones growing about, & couered ouer with some posthard or Warke, for that the seedes through the burning of the Sun, & shewes of the raine corrupting, doe vtterlye perishe and come to nothing, and the Mice and Rats dee greatly couet to feed on the roots of the artichokes, and if they once taste of the rootes, or otherwise be moued to come vnto them, then gather they after in great companies vnto the place, and that comming a great way of, so much do they delight in the saucour and taste

of those rootes. Wherefore to auoid the resort and comming of them vnto the rootes, then take (as Varro willet) either swines dung, lapping the same about the roots, or els fig ashes, strawing them in like sort about the rootes, which so will drie them away.

The Phisicke helpe.

The artichock eaten raw, doth amend the saueur of the mouth, and the prickle partes like to the Pine apple kernels, sodden tender, and boyled after with butter and vinegar & seasoned with salt, be greatly commended: & some delight in eating of them rawe, and finde a pleasantnes in the eating if they be prepared with pepper, salt, and the fine powder of Coliander seedes strawed vpon. And stieped in wine, or rather sodden in wine, & eaten, doth not onely meue or cause vrines, but procure the veneriall act, and the same sodden in water & eaten, doth strengthen the stomacke, & procure a more earnest desire both of man & woman, by eating both at one time of the same. And Galen affirmeth, the artichock to be then hard of digestion, and hurtfull to the stomacke, when the same is growne vnto the sheading quite of all the floures of the head, although some write when it commeth to the bearing off floures, at what time the riper ones (as they write) doe not onely wax dry of moisture, but hard and rough of skin, and also haue more plentie of the chollerick iuice: and of this they are rather to be sodden then rawe, & yet the yong ones being full of iuce may safely be eaten raw being prepared in the like order as aboue is taught. These hitherto of the properties of the Artichocks.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Leekes. Cap 53

Leekes ought to be sowne in a battell ground, and especially in a plaine low place, as writeth Palladius, and that the beds bee leuell, high cast vp, well laboured, and orderly dunged. And the vnset Leekes after two moneths sowing, ought to be cut as they grow, for so (as Collumella writeth) they wax the bigger, and continue the longer. And the better also they will prosper, if after euerie remoouing, and setting againe, the blades bee cut: and how often they bee cut, so often

128 The sowing and setting of hearbes,

ten to be watered and dunged. And this also learne, that the bigger the heads growe, so much the further distant, as commonly foure fingers a sunder they ought to be set, and after the growing, the blades then to be cut, also, the often watering dunging, plucking vp the weedes growing neere to them, and the often remoouing, doe greatly further the increase. And when you mind to haue the heads of the Leekes grow bigge, then befoze the setting againe, cut away all the small berrie roots, & vnder the heads lay either pot-shards, or oyster shels betweene the heads and the earth, and after couer each head so ordered with earth, and by that meanes the heads will grow the bigger, so that you doe not then water thē, after the minde (of the Greeke) Sotion. And Palladius writeth of Leeks on this wise, that when the leekes be grown a finger bignes, and that the blades be halfe cut away, that then yee set the heades againe in new and soft cow-dung, foure fingers a sunder each from other. And when the Leekes haue gotten some strength of roote in the earth, then with your forked dibble, put vnder the head, loose it so in the earth, that the head may so seeme to hang in the earth, and in the head by that meanes finding such large emptines vnder it, will after grow out, and fill that emptinesse.

And further, if you desire onely to haue vnset Leekes, then sow your seedes thicker together: but if big in the head, then sow your seedes the thinner, and dayly in a maner weed them and feed them with soft cow dung. And the the seeds also may be sowne in the moneths of March, April, May, and all June: But remoued and set againe (after the minde of Palladius) in the month of July, August, September, and October, will well serue the moneths of March and Aprill following, being as aboue saide new dunged in the setting, and watered. And both the Greeke Sotion, Columella, and Palladius do write that if many seedes of the Leekes be tyed vp together, and set in prepared earth, & soon after watered, then will al the seedes in an heape together grow vp into one meruaillous big Lake, right wondrous to behold. And this practise may bee tryed by the seedes of any other plant.

map

may be caused, if that into the head of a Leêke you put a rape-seede (the hole befoze being bozed with a wooden picke, for that killeth the head) and then set oꝛderly, as is aboue said, doeth grow into a marueilous bignes, as wꝛiteth the afoze-said Palladius. Columella wꝛiteth, that the head of a Leêke bozed with the pointe of a wooden picke oꝛ stiffe Keede, oꝛ else by any other meanes, a hole opened with iron, and putting into the same hole a Gourd seede, in the stead of Rape seede, taught befoze, and oꝛdꝛing of the leêke (as is aboue said) will after grow into a marueilous bignes.

And there is yet an other way taught of certaine others, which is, that so many seedes be put into a thin Keede, as a may may aptly take vp with thzee of his fingers, and them set oꝛderly into the ground, and of these seedes together will pꝛocæde the like big plant, as is aboue said. And Columella willeth that after the sowing your seedes, and that couered with earth, to tread the earth close vpon them with the foote, and to doe no other woꝛke vnto them, vntill thzee daies be past, and in the fourth day to spꝛinkle your seedes with water, vnlesse they be in the meane time watered with raine, for by that meanes (saith he) they will sauour much better: and when in sowing oꝛ planting you mixe sand wth the earth, then will the Leêkes growe and yeeld the plentifuller. And to take away the strong bꝛeath and smell of eating of Leêkes, chawe then Cummine in thy mouth, and the same will take away the strong smell, although you had eaten a large handfull of the Leêkes at one time. And Petrus Crescentius wꝛiteth, that the seedes of Leêkes powꝛed into wine, do not suffer the wine after to sower: but yet they restoze vineger vnto the naturall taste and smell of wine, taking away by that meanes all the tartnes and sharpnes thereof. And Nero Cæsar so greatly commendeth vnset Leêkes, that eating them euery day with oyle, will after cause a cleare voice to sing, either priuately oꝛ publiquely. And lastly, this by experience is found, that the Leêke commeth vp after the eighteenth daies sowing, and groweth vnto two yeres end, and after that falleth to seeding, and so dieth.

The Physicke helps.

The Leeke of the Garden drieth in the second degree, and heateth in the third, and the seedes may well bee kept three yeares. The Leeke bruised and mixed with salt, and that laid on euil pushes, doth heale them: and being brought vnto pouder, and tempered with oyle of Roses and vineger, & dropped into the eares, doth put away the pains of them: and the selfe same taken, doth helpe the tooth-ach: but the Garden Leeke by often eating, doeth harme both the stomacke and eies: and much more the wilde Leeke. The often eating of the Leeke doth fill the body with winde, and therefore it ought twice to be sodden in water, before the eating with meat, and so the malice of it is qualified. And the Leeke also draweth downe the tearmes, causeth vrine, and procureth a superfluous heat. The iuce of the Leeke drunke with womans milke, doeth helpe an old cough, and the blisters of the lungs: and the same drunke doth helpe the spitting of blood. And for the casting or vomiting vp of olde bruised blood, take two drammes of the iuce of the Leeke, with the like quantitie of fine pouder of the gaule, and Olybanum, mixing them together, which after drink, & it doth greatly helpe: and the same mixture applied vnto the nostrils, doth stay the bleeding of the nose. And eating the Leeke raw, doeth cause vomiting, and is contagious, yet the same putteth away drunkennes. And a plaster made of the Leek with hony, and that laid on broken and spoiled members, doeth assuage the swelling, and consume the clotted blood. And against the paines of the hips, drink the iuce of the Leeke, and it will ease the same. And the iuce doth especially heale such wounds which be cold and putrified, if the same be powred into them, and eateth away rotted flesh of the wounds. And the iuce mixed with the rootes of white Lilies, and anointed on the hips, doth put away the pain of them. And the often eating of the Leek doth cause the head ache, burdeneth the stomacke, causeth thirst, and inflameth the blood: and the iuce mixt with salt, and that laid on fresh wounds, doth vnclose them. And the eating of the leek procureth

cureth a desire to the venereal act. And the iuice of the Leek drunk in wine, doth both help the old cough & the dropfie. And against the paines of the head, take two partes of the iuice, with a third part of hony, that drop either into the nostrils or eares, and it will greatly help. And the vnset Leekes sodden in good white wine, with May butter, and that laid plaster wise on the belly, so hot as the patient may wel abide it, & at the cooling of that, apply another hot plaster, & this do the third and fourth time together if need require, which without doubt will greatly ease the cholick. And the water of the rootes distilled in Iune, drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, doth greatly help such as spit blood, and also helpeth barren women by often drinking thereof: and the water stayeth the great bleeding at the nose, if fine cotten be dipped in water and put vp into the nostrils. And the same water drunke, doth helpe the costine belly & the pain of the hips, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, causeth vrine, and sendeth forth the stone. And the water speedily helpeth wounds, if they be washed morning and euening with it. And the same water doth greatly helpe vnto the exulceration and fracture of womens priuie places which sometimes hapneth after the birth of big children, if they be bathed or washed with the same water morning & euening. These hitherto of the properties of Leeks.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Garden

Onion. Chap. 54.

The Onion throughe the bignesse of the head, and number of cartilages, with the which the body is included, was of the ancient Husbandmen so named. And now, as touching the condition of the ground and manner of sowing the seeds, you shal vnderstand that the same ought to be done in a fat ground, laboiously digged vp, dunged and watered, and the earth also neare red, as writeth the Oke Sotion. Also the ground where you minde to sowe your seedes, ought to be cast vp, and lie open all the winter thozow, that it may so be nipped and bitten of the frost, and the weeds killed and after that to be dunged and the earth cast level into beds,

in which doing, plucke vp and cast away all maner of weeds and rootes that you can finde. And when you haue thus handled and ordred your earth, then in the moneth of March in a calme and faire day, the wind blowing out of the South or East, sowe orderly your seedes, with the seede of the herbe Sauery among them, for so they prosper the better, as writeth Pliny. And when they come vp, you must diligently weede them for thre or foure daies together: and as Palladius willeth, your beds ought to be thrice digged vp finely, and plaine raked ouer before the sowing of the seedes. And now after the yong plants be sprung vp, and that you would haue your Onions to growe bigge in the heads, and not to beare seedes, then must you breake off the greene blades, that the iuice may so goe to the rootes, or els breake off and cut away both the blades and small hairie rootes, before the setting againe in the earth, for so they will grow the bigger in the heads, as writeth the Greeke Sotion. And this learne, that the seedes sown in the wane of the moone, come vp both small and sower: but those seedes sown in the increase of the moone, spring vp the bigger and sweeter. This also is not to be ouerpassed, that in all kinds of Onions, the longer in fashion is sower then the round, and the reddest sower then the white: and the drie then the greene: and the rawe then the sodden. And farre bigger will the heads be, if after their remoouing they be set againe into beddes lying open for twentie dayes before, and that well turned in with dung, and so long dried, vntill the moisture be almost spent, after the minde of the learned Sotion. And some plucke off the vpper skinne, leaning them bare, and so setting them againe in the earth: And thus setting them againe, they ought to bee placed a hand breadth and somewhat more alunder, that they may the better prosper. And those which you mind to eate before the full ripenes, ought to be set in beds, where Cucumbers or Gourds, and Pellons be, and in their growing to be often digged about, watered and weeded, for so they prosper the better, as writeth Palladius.

And when they bee growen and shotte vp into high
 stems,

stems, then must their weake bodies be staied vp with small props, lest their long small neckes bent much downe-ward with blasse of winde, and the heads also often knocking or beating together through blowing of the windes, should so shake forth and leese much seede. And the time also of gathering the heads, as Columella and Palladius teach, when the seedes appeare blacke of colour. And further, Sotion the Greeke writeth, that the Onions will last a long time, if that befoze their laying or hanging vp, they be laide or put for a season in warme water: or els, as Pliny willeth, to be infused in warme and salty water for a season, and after laid to drie in the Sunne untill they be thowow drie, and then couered with Barley straw: and in such wise they ought to be laid in the strawe, that the one touch not the other. And some hang them in the smoke and Chimney, neare vnto the heate of the fire, and doe likewise continue a long time. And to make Onions grow of a marueilous bignes in the beds, close the seedes of them with the seedes of the Gourd in the best dung, and mixe the earth diligently with them in the putting into the earth. And you may cause them also to growe of the same bignesse, if that raising vp the earth about them, you doe loose the earth hollow vnder the heads, as befoze is taught of the ordering of Leakes. Also you may cause the like heads, if boring certaine holes, you put into them some seedes of the Gourd, setting them so into the earth. And there be also husbandmen, which will the seedes of the Onion to bee then gathered, when as the pillings of the head be halfe drie, and that they be after thowowly dried in the Sun. And here learne, that certaine ancient writers (as Pliny and others) will, that both the Onions and Garlike should be sowne neer to sweet smelling flowres, to cause them saour and smell the sweeter. And those Onions which you minde to plucke vp, to keepe a long time, ought to be done in the waning or decrease of the Moone.

And further learne, that Palladius willeth the young Onions to be set againe in February, but sowne in the seedes, both in the spring and Harvest. And yet many ancient husbandmen

bandmen willett, that the seedes be sown in the moneths of December, Januarie, Februarie, and March, either alone or in beds with other hearbes, and after they be somewhat come vp, then to bee remooued and thinner set, as a span asunder: and if the earth in the same yeare shall not be dunged, then the sowing time following it ought to be dunged for the better increase and plentifuller growing. And those Onions be counted best, which be set in the moneth of August, for that in the yere following, they may so send forth their seedes: and those be counted worst, which be set Greene in the Lent time. And to conclude, those Onions be thought to keepe the better and longer time, which bee gathered and plucked vp in the increase of the Mone, and being then a calme and cleare day, and after laid to drye in a shadowie place. And the seedes may well be kept for the space of one whole yere.

The Physicke helps.

Onions be hot and moist in the third degree, and heate also in the fourth degree, as witnesseth *Galen*. And the often eating of the raw Onions, doeth cause a rough throat, winde in the stomacke, and the head-ache. And the Onion mixed with honie, doth take away the grieve of an euill stomacke: & yet the eating of them doth harme the members, for that they drie ouermuch the moisture of the body: but tempered with vineger, and laid on piles, they do then open them. And the eating of them, doeth soften the bellie, and causeth thirst. And the iuice of the Onion mixed with honie, doth amend the sight, and the pinne and the webbe, if the same be often dropped into the eies. And against paines of the breast, take the Onions roasted vnder embers, & eat them morning and euening, which by that meanes causeth easie spitting vp of humours, and looseth the breast: and in the same manner it putteth away swelling, and purgeth the stomacke. And the Onion bruised, and mixed with salt and hony, and that laid on warts, doth make them fall off by the rootes. And the Onions bruised with vineger, if a scabbed skin be washed with the same, doe heale and make the skin faire.

faire. And the eating of them raw, doth cause loathsomnes vnto the stomacke, and yeeldeth a strong saour out of the mouth. And the iuice of it drawne vp into the nostrils, doth purge the head. And against the biting of a mad dog, take the iuice of the Onion, with the iuice of Rew, or herbe Grace, and hony, and with the same anoint the place. And the often eating of Onions, doth harme the cholerieke, for that they cause them to be both hotter and drier: but the flegmatick persons the Onions seldome harme, for that they cut asunder, and consume the superfluous humours in them. And the iuice of the Onion mixed with Capons grease, and anointed on raw heeles, or sleepe gaules, doth soone heale them. And the iuice dropped into mattery and running cares, and after seething them in salt broth with other good spices, is then profitable to the stomacke, and cause a better nourishment. And the Onion bruised with honie, and that laid plaster wise on any wounds, doth heale them. And the yong tender Onions eaten with hony do maintain health. And the Onion roasted in the hot embers, and eaten with oyle, doth helpe the cough. And the iuice mixed with womans milke, and dropped into the cares, doth helpe the paine and noise of them. And the iuice of the Onion drunk with the iuice of Fenell, doth helpe the dropsie, and being drunke with Rew and honie, doth greatly helpe the heavy sleepines and forgetfulnes. And the iuice also mixt with raisons and figs, and that laid plaster wise on impostumes, doth both breake and draw them. And the eating of the Onion doth cause fearfull dreames, especially to such lately copen out of a sicknes. And lastly, the Onion accustomed to be eaten morningly, and that yong and tender, both of labouring and husbandmen, doth greatly maintaine their health, and preuaileth the like to them against the infection of the aire, by eating them with salt and bread, for so they lesse harm the head. These hitherto of the properties of Onions.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Garlike. Chap. 55.

The lesser Garlike must be sowne or set in the ridges of beddes in the Moneth of September, and Nouember,
and

and raised somewhat high, that it may the lesse bee harmed with Winter waters. And therefore you shall make sundry little furrowes in your beds, like to such which be commonly made in the fields, to auoide the moisture and raine. And set the Cloues (plucked off from the heads) foure fingers asunder, and not deeper then the middle ioint, that they may the better come vp. And when thzee leaues are sprung vp, then weed about them: for the oftner you do weed them, the bigger they will ware in the heads. And if you will haue them big in the heads, then tread them flat down, after y^e fastening & tying together of the greene blades, which you must doe, when as the blades be somewhat come vp, and not growen vnto a stalk, that so the iuice may returne to the heads. And Palladius willet, that Carlike bee sown either in Ianuarie, or Nouember, in a white ground, well digged and labored, but not dunged, and in a warme day, and that the earth be then indifferent drie: for by that meanes will the seeds prosper the better, and come forward. And yet Pliny writeth, that the seeds sown doe slenderly come vp: for that in the first yeares growth, they bee no bigger then the Leekes in the heads: and in the second yeare they come diuided: but in the third yeare, the heads be growen to perfect bignesse. And further, there be certaine others which will, that the seeds of the Carlike be sown in the moneths of September, October, februarie, and March: and in hot countries in the moneth of December. And Palladius writeth, that if any happen to be left in the earth when they bee ripe, then those remaining doe after renue both in the rootes and leaues, and send forth their seedes in the yeare following, which may bee sown and bying forth Carlike. And besides, Palladius willet, that when the Cloues bee thus set on the ridges of the beddes in white earth, well laboured and dyessed without Dung, and that they be shot vp in stems, to tread the blades flat to the earth, and keeping them downe, that the blades shoot not into an height, which by the often treading of them downe, will cause the iuice to returne vnto the Cloues, and make a mightie head. Moreover, Pliny, Sotion the Greeke, Palladius,

Palladius, and diuers other antient men do wryte, that if the cloues of the Garlike be set in the earth when the mone is vnder the earth, and the heads plucked vp when the likewise is set vnder the earth, that then the strength of the sauour of them will be so small, that the bzeath of the eaters of them shall scarcely be felt. And not vnlike to this doth Columella wryte, that if the cloues be set in the beds, & mone being then vnder the earth, and the heads plucked vp at the change of the mone, that the sauour of them wilbe greatly abated. And the Greek Sotion wryteth, that you may make the Garlik heads sauour sweeter, if that you mixe the kernels of Oliues bzuised with the cloues and afterward set them together in the earth, or gently bzeeking flat the sharpe ends of the cloues. you set them so into the earth: or els in the setting, you mixe the Lees of the Oyle Oliue with the cloues of the Garlike. And Didimus wryteth, that the strong sauour gotten by eating of Garlike, is put away by the onely eating of a græne Beane or two. And others wryte, that the roote of the Wætes roasted vnder hot embers, and eaten: doth put away the strong bzeath and smell of the Garlike. And likewise certaine late practitioners doe wryte, that if the eaters of Garlike do after eate græne Barcelly, that the same doth shortly after take away the lothsome smell thereof. And many of the antient wryters assume, that the Garlike heads will continue the longer, and serue the better to vse, if that they be afterwards either buried or covered in Chasse, or hanged vp in the smoke. Likewise there be some which will, that the heads of Garlike be a little while steeped in warme salt water, and after to be dzied and hanged vp or covered, which so doth cause them to last the longer. But in this or that manner vsed, they become (after the setting) barraine of yeld so; the most part. And sufficient it is, that the Garlike heads be dzied ouer the fire, that they may not spryng or growe afterward.

And Pliny wryteth, that those heads of Garlike be of a sower taste, which haue the most cloues: and he also affirmeth, that the Garlike heads will haue no stronger sauour

oz smell after the sœthing, then the Onions haue after their sœthing. And Palladius writeth, that the Garlik heads ought then to be plucked vp, when the stalkes ware drie and sœble: and this especially do in the wane of the moone, & in a cleare day and drie season. And Democritus in his husbandry writeth, that if you mind to drie the smal birds from the eating and spoiling of your fruits, and not to come neere them, then take Garlike heads, and hang sundry on diuers bzanche s of the trees.

The Physicke helps.

Garlike is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and hath the vertue of consuming, dissoluing, and expelling poyson. And against the biting of any venemous beasts and worms, take Garlik, bruising the same, and after apply the same plaster-wise on the bite: and this is named the husbandmans triacle. And against worms in the belly, take Garlike, with the iuice of Parcely and Mintes, which mixe with a little vineger and pepper, & making therof a sauce, vse to eat of the same with bread or meat. And for the cholicke and paines of the rains, seeth Garlike in wine and oile, which applying plaster-wise on the belly, & round about the root of the yard, doth greatly helpe the same. And by eating of Garlike, a man may the safelier go into a suspected aire, and by stinking places, because the strong sauer of it (for the season) doth put away all other noisome sauors and stincks. And a Garlike cloue holden in the mouth, doth cease the paine and ach of a tooth, if the same proceed of a colde cause.

And Syrapio writeth a marueilous matter, that although the eating of Garlike doth harm the whole and perfect sight of the eies, yet he affirmeth, that the moisture of it doeth comfort a dull sight. And here learne, that the Garlike hath certaine euill properties, which be these: it maketh inflammation, drieth and harmeth the stomacke, and causeth thirst, and laide to the skin (in any place) it raiseth vp blisters, if it lieth twelue houres space, and therefore the often eating of it doth harme the cholerick, in that the Garlike doth inflame them, and drieth the whole body, especially in a hot season, and engendreth

gendreth beside the lepricin them, causeth also frenzinesse, hurreth the sight, and moueth the head-ache. And in consideration hereof, the cholerick ought to take heed of the often eating of Garlike, and chiefly in the latter end of the Spring, the Summer, & hot season of the Haruest, because it doth then sooner engender red choler, and increaseth aduust matter : also it doth more harme being eaten raw, then sodden or roasted. And yet the eating of Garlike moderately in the winter time, is right profitable to the flegmatick persons. And further, Garlike roasted vnder the hot embers, and bruised with figs and barrowes greace, and that applied plaster-wise, doth breake a cold impostume which is longer it be ripe. And the garlik eaten putteth away the inward swelling of the body, and softneth and openeth impostumes (as abouesaid) and draweth forth the matter, and the head anointed with the iuice of Garlik, doth kill both the nits and lice. And the Garlik drunk with the decoction of the Organy doth also kill the nits and lice of the head. And the ashes of the Garlike mixed with hony, and that anointed on thin places of the head, doth helpe the shedding of the haire: and the same anointment amendeth the foulness or filthiness of the skin. And the ashes of Garlik doth help the vlcers open, by sprinkling them vpon: & the ashes of the Garlik wrought together with hony and May butter, and anointed on the grieued places, doth make the skin smooth, if the same be either infected with the scab, or lepric, so that the anointing be done after bathing in an hot house. And as the most Authors do write, the often eating of Garlik, doth greatly harm and dull the sight of the eies. And Garlik sodden and eaten, doth cause a cleare voice, helpeth an old cough, purgeth the cold brest, and drieth vp the moisture of the stomacke. And the Garlike (with the leaues & all) sodden in wine & drunk, doth not only procure vrine, but moueth down the tearms, and draweth down also the after burthen, if the belly be anointed with the same. And a smoke also made of Garlike, may doe the like, if the woman sit ouer it, on a close chaire for the purpose. And the saueur of the Garlike, doeth drive

away all venemous wormes. And if any being stinged of an adder, doe eate of the Garlike, he shall not after be harmed of the stinging, and is also a good remedy against poyson. And Garlike sodden with vineger, and drunke with that & hony mixed together, named Mulse: doeth after send forth the flatte and broad wormes, and many other venemous wormes crept into the belly. And Garlike sodden with oile Oliue, and annointed, doth aswage the swellings and other griefes of the bladder: and sodden with Centorie in wine, and drunke, doth helpe the dropisie gathered of a cold cause. And the Garlike bruised with the Coliander seedes, and so taken in wine, doth aswage the paines of the ioynts, and openeth the straitnesse of making water. And Garlike sodden with Beanes, being bruised & tempered with oile Oliue, or oyle of Poppy, and an ointment made of the same, with the which annointing the temples, do greatly help the headache. And the Garlike sodden, and after roasted drie, with Pellitory and Mastick, and brought to pouder, with which washing the mouth, doth greatly help the tooth-ache. And if a woman doubt of her being with childe, and smelleth not the fauour of the Garlike set by her bed side in the night, it doth then vndoubtedly declare that she is conceived with child. And the eating of Garlike is good & profitable both to husbandmen and labourers which often eate cold meats, and meats of hard digestion. These hitherto of the properties of Garlike.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the great

Garlike. Chap. 56.

THe great Garlike, which some Authors name the Africa Garlike, and the Greekes Aphroskorodon, is far bigger of increase then our common Garlike. And now this Garlike doth Columella will to bee set on the ridges of beds, like vnto the former Garlike, and that out of one head many cloues bee broken off, which ought to bee done in a faire and caline day, in a white earth wel digged vp & dressed, without any dung, about the Calends of October & Nouember. And to make the heads of this Garlike to grow big, then

order.

order the Earlike blades that come vp, like as was taught of the other Earlike. And in the setting also of the cloues, remember to plant them, not only foure fingers asunder, but a finger deepe, & to rake the earth often ouer them in the growing vp, whereby the iuice may run to the root, and cause them to waxe the bigger in the heads. And to conclude, all other instructions necessarily to be vnderstanded about the further ordering of this great Earlike, may be learned in other afoze taught.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Radish. Chap. 57.

The Radish roote is well knowen both vnto the rich and poore, so that as well the husbandmen as the Citizens doe (at this day) eate of the Radish, the same befoze being well scraped, cut into thinne round slices, and dipped in Water and Salt, the better procureth an appetite vnto meat.

And Columella willeth, that the seedes of the Radish be sowen in a wel dunged & laboured earth, and in the moneths of March, April, & September. And after the roote be growen vnto some bignesse, then couer it ouer thicke with earth, for otherwise, by leauing it bare, that the Sunne and aire may worke on the root, doth so cause the same to become hard and hollow, as writeth Pliny, which willeth the Radish to be sowen in a loose and moist earth, without dunging. And Palladius writeth, that the Radish in no wise agreeth to be sowen either in a sandy or gravelled ground: but he affirmeth it to ioy vnder a temperate aire, and to be sowen in beds, large asunder, and deepe nigged after a new raine, vntlesse the ground be sufficiently moist and watry of it selfe. And when the seeds be sowen, then ought they by and by after to be couered with fine earth, and no dung mingled nor cast vpon, but onely the chaffe of cozne, although Columella contrary writeth. And Aristomachus willeth the leaues to be quite broken off, and pulled away in the winter, whereby the root may be the bigger in Summer. And the roote also will be the pleasanter in eating, if you brake off the leaues befoze it grow to a stalk, as Plinie writeth. And the smaller the leafe shall be, so much

the sweeter and pleasanter will the roote be. And to be also watered with salt water, it prospereth the better, as Pliny writeth: for that by the watering on this wise, the root sendeth such bitternesse as then remaineth in the same. And to make your Radish taste sweet, then after the mind of Florentine, steepe your seedes befoze, either in water and hony mixed together, or in the liquoz of Raisons, or else in water and suger for two daies together, and after the drying againe, sow them so in the earth. And to make your Radish grow big, plucke away all the leaues, sauing a small stalk remaining, and after coter the same very thicke ouer with earth, as Palladius willet. And the like affirmeth Pliny, if that a hole be made with a wooden dibble, and the same filled five fingers high with the chaffe of corne, and after the seedes mixed with dung and fine earth, it will after cause so great a roote grow, as was the bignes of the hole made. And the thin sowing of the seedes in the end of July, and vnto the middle of August, or else a little after, and weeding them often after their comming vp, doth so cause them to grow the bigger in the roote. And they also ioy in open aire, but be much harmed by growing in shadowie places. And if such a drought doth happen, that you cannot aptly sow your seedes, then sow them the thicker together, in some moist and watery place.

And when the yong plants be well sprung vp, and strong in the earth, & that the ground be well moistened with show-ers, then may you remoue the yong plants, especially about the end of August, and vnto the middle of September. And set them after in the earth, well laboured and trimmed, for so they grow the pleasanter in eating. And Petrus Crescentius writeth, that the roots of the Radish dried, and those wrought into powder, and after powzed into a bigger glasse, or narrow mouthed pot glazed, full of wine, and letting the same so stand couered for a few daies, wil after be turned into sharpe vinegar, which drunke daily, doth marueilously weare away, and consumeth the stones of the kidneis, and helpeth besides many other griefes of the body.

The Physicke helps.

The Radish is hot and drie in the third degree, but some write in the second degree. And now the Radish eaten at supper, doeth digest the meate eaten, and heateth the stomack, and causeth also a stinking breath, if any sleep by and by after the eating. And this roote is hurtfull vnto women with child, and therefore to be refrained in that season. And the iuice of the roote anointed on olde vlcers, doeth both cleanse and eat away the canker in them: and the same like worketh the poulder of the root. And the iuice of the Radish boiled with hony, and mixed with a litle vineger, and after strained and drunk, doth help the quartaine ague, and stopping of the milt. And the root of the radish laid plaster-wise doeth helpe the water betweene the skin, and such diseased with the hardnes and swelling of the milt. And the iuice of the roote drunke with the liquor of Raisons, doth helpe the kings euil: and drunk with hony, doth put away the cough: and this being also drunk, helpeth such which be stopped in the brest, and draw the wind short. And of this root is made an Oximel on this wise: first bruiſe the root somewhat, and infuse them for two or three daies in vineger, and after put to the same a third part of hony, which strained, drink thereof, for this helpeth the quartaine and one day ague, vnles the same proceed of salt fumes. And if there be colde and vndigested humours in the stomacke, then steepe the oindes of the rootes of the Radish with hony and vineger mixt together, & of the same let the patient daily eat a good quantity, and after the same so eaten, drinke a draught of warme water, putting then your finger, or a feather dipped in sallet oile into the throte, and this forthwith will procure you to cast forth at any time; but the aptest time is in the morning. And against the hardnesse of the Milt and Liuer, seeth the hearbe alone in Oile and Wine, and apply the same plaster-wise, and the same plaster laide hot on the bottome of the bellie, neare to the root of the priuitie, doeth helpe the strangury. And the water of the Radish distilled in September, drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three

*blowes**quartaine
ague**Engl still**hony good
in milt**Engl*

or foure ounces at a time, doth help the stone, causeth vrine, and clenseth also the raines, and the bladder: It doth cleanse the places also where the stones containe. And the samewater drunke, doth helpe the kings euill, killeth the wormes of the belly, and helpeth the digestion of the stomack, and purgeth it of all clammy humors, and other matters which hinder digestion, and it openeth also euery stopping of the inner members and veins. And drunke in the quantity abovesaid, doth extenuate the rough humours, and causeth a cleare voice, and this water gargelled in the throte, and holden in the mouth, doth helpe the swelling of the throte, and vlcers of the gums, for it both resolueth, breaketh, and consumeth. And this water drunk morning & euening, vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, for three or foure weekes together, doth helpe the water betweene the skin, if that the patient refraineth much and often drinking: for the lesse the patient then drinketh, the more he sendeth forth of the water in the vrine, and by that meanes is the sooner holpen. These hitherto of the properties of the Radishes.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Nauew. Chap. 58.

The *Nauew* well beareth any aire in a manner, and delighteth in a fat loose ground, but it better prospereth in a leane and drie grauelly ground. And the propertie of the place doth change the *Nauew* into a *Rape*, and the *Rape* contrariwise into a *Nauew*. And that your *Nauews* may well prosper, sowe them in a well laboured and dunged ground. And they also wil come vp being sown in those places where the corne hath bene reaped of that same eare. And if you see that they grow too thicke then remoue them, and set them thinner, whereby the other vnremocued may grow the bigger in the root: they ought to be sown about the end of July, and in all the moneth thow of August: and if they happen to lacke raine, then to water them so often as need shall require, and in the wedding about them, both the *Nauew* and *Rape* be much strengthened, and grow the better. And those *Nauews* be the better, which be long, and in a maner wrinkled, not bigge, and not hauing many rootes, but one onely

roote,

water of
radish. and
for phlegm
in the
throat

and that both sharpe and straight : and of the Nauewes is made a whollsome composition with the Radish , a little salt, vineger, hony, mustard, and swæte spices , and without spices also the same may be made pleasant to eate.

The Physicke helps.

Nauew is hot of quality in the second degree, & doth much nourish, but hardly digesteth, & maketh the flesh soft, & puffeth vp, yet lesse then the Rape, for the which cause, if the Nauewes be boiled in water, and that the first water be cast away, and in the boiling of the second water, the hardnes of the substance tempered, and so they ingender a meane nourishment between good & euill. And of this, such as are not wel boiled do hardly digest, & cause windines, & a stopping both of the veines & pores. Therefore the Nauewes are best to be eaten when as they haue bin sod in two waters, and in the third seething to be boiled with the fat of Beefe or Mutton. These hitherto of the properties of the Nauew.

*Of the ordering, care, and secrets, both of the Parsenep
and yellow Carret. Chap. 59.*

THe garden Parsnep is well knowne to most persons, and is vsed in most places, which (as Rutilius writeth) being tenderly sod, nourisheth well the body. And now Palladius willethe Parsneps to be sown in the seeds, or set in the rootes, in the moneths of December, Januarie, and March, in fat ground, deepe digged, loose, and well turned vp, and orderly dressed. And the seeds also must be thin sown, and likewise the rootes thin set, whereby they may grow the bigger. And after the comming vp, they must bee wæded about for the better increase also of the roote. And Pliny writeth, that there be many kinds of Carrets, and this not of themselves, but of the proper places where they grow so altered. And now the yelow Carrets (most sown in gardens) ought to be ordered in the sowing, like as we haue aboue taught in the vsage of the Parsneps, and they ought also to be sown as well in Haruest as in the Spring time, and after they be come vp, then to be remoued and set thinner, for so they prosper much the better, and waxe longer in the rootes.

The Physicke helps.

The roote of the Parsnep is hot in the middle of the second degree, and moist in the first degree, so that the same eaten doth greatly profite the body. And now the root tenderly sodden & eaten, causeth vrine, & doth especially profite the melancholy. And the gardē Parsneps also eaten with meate be profitable to the body, in that they in gender good blood, & the wilde Parsnep roots eaten of women, do moue the tearmes. And the Parsnep roote hanged on the necke, doth help the swelling of the throte, and no venemous beast shall harne the person which beareth the roote about him. And the seedes of the Parsnep drunke with wine, and applied in plaster forme to the priuie place (as *Dioscorides* writeth) doeth drawe downe the tearmes, helpeth the straitnes of making water, and the paine of the side, which otherwise is called the plurisie. And the roote applied plaster wise doth helpe the bite or sting of venemous wormes. Also the roote sodden and eaten, doth cause vrine, and prouoketh the veneriall act. And the leaues bruised and laide plaster wise with hony, doth cleanse and heale the great eating in the vlcers. And the hearbe with the roote shred together, & distilled about the end of March, which drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, and the pallie members bathed with the water, doeth helpe the shaking of them. And drinking euery night to the quantity of sixe ounces at a time, doth prouoke the veneriall act, and increaseth the sperm of man: and this water also drunke doth helpe the straitnes of making water.

And now the garden Carret (as writeth *Constantine*) is hot & drie in the second degree. But the Carret which groweth of the owne accord (named the wilde Carret) is both lesse then the garden or sowed Carret, and is also drie and hot in the third degree. Also the garden Carrets tenderly sodden with meate, are pleasant and holefome. But now the wilde Carret boiled in wine, with as many figs as you think needfull, and drinke, doth put away the drie cough: and the selfe same wine drunke, doeth helpe the hard fetching of winde.

And

And the hearbe or roote boiled in lie or water, and washing the head therewith, doth help the shedding of the haire, proceeding of a colde cause : and three handfuls of this hearbe boiled in wine & oyle, and applied plaster wise on the belly doth put away wind & heateth the stomack. And the herbe boiked with mallowes and herbe mercury in wine and oyle, and applied in plaster forme on the nauill, doeth helpe gripings of the bowels. These hitherto of the properties both of the Parsnep and Carret.

*Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Melons and all kind
of Pompions. Chap. 60.*

MElons and all kinds of the Pompions, desire (in a manner) the same earth and aire which the Citrons and Cucumbers doe, and yet the earth not so fatte nor so much dunged, whereby they may growe the pleasanter in taste and be the sooner ripe. And all kinds ought to be sown thin, as the seedes put two foote asunder in the earth, well laboured and cast diligently into beds, for that they soy in largenes of roome where they may spread hither and thither. And they be also greatly comforted with hearbes growing neare to them, so that they neede little weeding : And they ought to be often watered, untill they be well sprung vp, but after you may not : and they be then ripe to be eaten, when they saour swæte and appeare yellow within. Also those Melons or Pompions be the pleasanter in eating, which haue farre smaller seedes then the other.

And there be other kindes of them which be small, græne, and very long, and all (in a manner) are crooked, which be named Melons, and doe also eate softer, like the Citrons, hauing the like taste in the eating, but they be not so colde as Citrons, and therfoze the better digested. And if you would make them sweete in the eating, then let the seedes be steeped for three daies together, in the swæte liquoz made of water and hony, called otherwise Pulle, or in swæte Cow milke, and after the drying, set orderly in the earth : for so the Pompions comming vp of those seedes will be far swæter and ple-

sant of tast. And the Pumpions will sauer and smell verie sweete, if the seedes be laid for a good whiles among Rose leaues, and that those leaues mixed with the seedes, be so put into the earth, or otherwise the seedes be either steeped in Rose water, or in some other pleasant sweete water, and then set (after the drying in the shadowe) into the ground. And here learne, that Cats ought carefully to be defended from the Pumpions, for that they greedily desire to come to them.

And as touching the other secrets, as to make them grow timely, very big, and without seedes: Read hereafter, where we intreat of the ordering of Gourds and Cucumbers.

The Physicke helps.

The Melons be cold and moist in the second degree: but those which be sweet in tast, are temperatly cold, & the seeds haue the like property in medicine to be vsed. And pleasantly doeth the Pompon eate, yet very hardly digesteth, through the coldnes mixed to the moisture of it. And the Pompon is then to be eaten, when the stomacke before is thorowly cleansed, in that the same doeth lightly alter into those humours, and doth so slacke digestion, by hauing preheminance in the stomacke. And of this we learne by the mind of the ancient men, that we eat the Pumpions fasting, and to eat no other meat after them, vntill they be halfe digested in the body. And the eating of them do greatly help vnnatural heats and wicked Agues. And the seeds do purge the skin, if the skin be washed with the decoction of them. And the Melons haue the vertue of clenfing, as writeth *Galen* in his booke *De alimentorum facultatibus*: and of this they may aptly clenfe the spots of the face, or Sun-burning, red pimples, and the foulness of the body, through the spots of fundry colours. And the person which is ill coloured in the face, let him or her take the seedes of the Melon, pilling off the vpper skin of them, vnto which put a litle beane meale, and working the seedes into fine poudre, mixe them wel together, & after make smal cakes of the same with Rose water, which drie in the Sunne, and when they be thus dried, then

then wash the face with those cakes orderly, and they wil after cause the face become very cleere and faire, and cleanse the filthie spots of the skin. And the seeds eaten or drunke, doe cause vrine, and purge the lungs and kidneis. And more do the seeds worke in the lungs then in the bladder, for that a more stronger and mightier remedy ought to be ministred in the stone of the bladder, then in the stone of Kidneis or Loynes. And the vpper rinde of the Melon laid to the forehead, doth stay the running of the eies. And the root of the Melon doth heale such vlcers that stand full of matter, if the same be applied plaster wise with hony on the places. And many do eat the Melons with vineger, mixing with it the Peny-royall and Onions together, for so they temper the harming force of the cold of it: and the Melons distilled, which ought to be done when they be ripe, and shred into final pieces, the water drunke once euery morning, vnto the quantitie of three or foure ounces, for the space of a moneth, doth greatly helpe the stone, causeth vrine, and purgeth the Kidneis: also the same water cooleth and delaieith al inward heats not vnnatural, cooleth the liuer, and ceaseth the thirst tempered with suger. And this water doeth helpe a hot cough, if linnen clothes dipped in it be applied without, and it both putteth away heats & swellings of the body, wheresoeuer they shall be. These hitherto of the properties of the Melons and all the kinds of Pompions.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Cucumber. Chap. 61.

Cucumbers be either sown or set in beds or in furrows. A foote and a halfe high, and thre foote broad, and the spaces betwene the furrowes ought to bee eight foote broad, whereby they may the frelier spread out and runne abroad. And Palladius willeth the seedes after the sowing, to be often watered, vntill they be somewhat sprung vp, for that they ioy much in moisture.

And after they be thus sprung vp, which commonly do appeare after the first or seuenth day sowing, then may you water them no longer, for that the watring afterward doeth soone destroy and kill them. And heere learne, that when the

seeds be sown, you ought then in the first or eight day following, to see if the seeds be then hard or opened, a sure note or token that they may be good, but if the seeds be soft, then doe they thoroughly declare to be naught.

And in this case found, you ought to set other in their places, prouing againe the sixth day after, which finding in like condition corrupted, then set other in their places, and this so often do, untill they appeare aboute the earth. And they also desire to be sown or set in a fatte earth, well dressed, dunged, and moist, and set in the end of the moneth of Aprill, and also in the beginning of May: and after their comming vp, they neither need raking or weeding with the hands: so that they be much holpen with the other hearbes growing neare vnto them. And to make them the tenderer and pleasanter in the eating, keepe the seedes for two daies before the sowing, in sheeps milke mixed with hony, or as Pliny writeth, in water mixed with hony, or in water mixt with suger, so do they cause the tenderer, whiter, and pleasanter Cucumbers, both in the smell and taste, and fairer also to the sight. And the same experience doe Columella, Florentine the Graeke, Pliny and Palladius write. And the Cucumbers also will grow long, white, and tender, if that vnder the branches of the Cucumbers growing, you set either a boule or pan of water and hony, two hand breadth beneath them, so by that meanes they be caused y^e like, as writeth Gargilius Martialis. And as they spread and runne out into length, so ought they then to be bozne vp with props and other meanes from the earth, for the weaknes of their branches, and vnto the better growing and prospering of the Cucumbers. And if you will haue Cucumbers without seeds, then before the setting dip your seed in the oyle of Sawine, mixt with the herbe Culix bruised, and the Cucumbers wil after grow the like. And to haue Cucumbers timely ripe, and in a manner all the yeare, then vse the seeds in the like order, as shall after be taught of the gourds, and that they also be set in such vessels or baskets, that they may afterward in the colde season, be dwtone vnder the succour of some warme place in the hause, and in warme sunny

Sunny daies set againe abroad. And they may also be set vnder the close couering of the walke in a garden, from the cold winds and frosts, and from the great heat of the Sun, and so continue all the yeare thozow, as write both Pliny and Columella, that Tiberius Caesar had the like. And beware that they which haue their monethly courses, doe not then either come neare, nor handle them in no wise, for feare of hindring their growth afterwards, and as some thinke, they doe kill the yong Cucumbers by their looking then vpon them. And to haue besides your Cucumbers with litle moisture in them, let then the hole in the furrow, in which you shal let the seeds be filled halfe vp with chaffe, and the other halfe couered againe with earth, and water them nothing at all after the doing on this wise.

The Physicke helps.

Cucumbers be colde and moist in the second degree, as writeth *Agineta*, and doe hardly digest; but the outward part of them doth cause a perfiter moisture to such, hauing hot and strong stomackes, and extinguisheth thirst. And the whole substance also of the Cucumber eaten in the summer, doeth greatly profite such, which then exercise themselues with any labour. But the eating of them do much harme the flegmatick and delicate persons, which do no labour of body, and that to their stomacks especially. And yet the water or iuice of them doth help such diseased with the Ague, and ceaseth thirst.

Also the meat of the Cucumbers hard within, and heavy in the hand, bee dangerous to the stomacke, and of this the ripe ones be the oftner willed to be eaten, which are known on this wise: that when they be soft in the feeling, and light in the hand then they be fittest to be eaten. And the seedes drunk in milk, do greatly helpe such hauing a blistred bladder, & drunk in wine with so many seeds of Cummin as you may wel take vp with three fingers, and bruised altogether, doth greatly helpe the cough. And the seedes also bruised, and drunke with womens milke, doeth helpe the frenziness: and also doeth helpe those that spittematter vppe, being

being drunke with a little quantity of Cummin seeds. And the Cucumber eaten doth cause a soluble belly, & profiteth the stomacke, as writeth *Dioscorides*: and the smell of them doth restore the person out of his wit. And the seedes haue a meane force to cause vrine: and the seedes boiled in wine, and laid plaster wise, with the greene leaues vpon, doe helpe the bite of Dogs. And the seedes bruised and tempered with hony, and that laid on hot burning Pushes, doe qualifie the heate, and cleare them. These hitherto of the properties of the Cucumber.

Of the ordering, care, and secret of the Gourde. Chap. 62.

The Gourdes desire to be sown or set in fat ground, moist, dugged, and well laboured, as writeth Palladius. And in watering the seedes often they prosper the better, for that they much ioy, and are holpen with moisture, although there be some which increaseth with a small watering, and be also moze pleasanter by this in the eating. And if you happen to set the seedes in a drie ground, then set an earthen pan full of water neere to them, putting clothes or lints made sharpe at the one end, and hanging halfe out of the pan ouer the edges of it, that they may so drop continually water on them in the forme of feltring, as the wise name it: And this way also of the watering of them doeth greatly helpe in a growth. And further Palladius willethe the seedes to be set in the end of the moneth of Aprill, and beginning of the moneth of May, a three or foure foote asunder, and in such sort, as that two of the seedes be thrust into the earth together, with three of the fingers, and that the blunt ends also be turned downward, and the sharp ends standing vpward. And that a night before they be thus planted in the earth, the seedes be put into a pan of water, casting then forth such seedes which swim aboue, and the other not the like swimming, or rather lying in the bottome, set in the earth well mixed with dung. And they may not be set in low furrowes, lest the raine falling, and filling those furrows, do so choke and kil the yong plants sprung vp. And when they be well sprung vp, and appeare aboue the earth, then rake the earth, putting it well about them

them, and as neede shall require, to vse to water the plants. And if they happen to be set in an earth somewhat loose, then after they be sprung vp into some bignes, the earth round about ought to be deepe digged vp that the roots may so stretch and run out diuers waies. And as they grow vp still, you may make a couer ouer them like to an harbour, vnto the height of a man, that the leaued branches may be laid ouer to giue shadowe, and the leaues also laid on the Courdes to defend the heat of the Sunne, may so cause them to grow the better. And if not on this wise, then may you let their vine runne along on the earth if you list. And to this also in doing the like shall much auaille, wherby they may the sooner send forth their fruits, and the moze soze, if that the principaller and bigger heads be a litle broken off in the tops, that they may so cause other branches to spring forth of the Courds.

And Columella, Pliny, and Palladius doe write, that the seedes taken forth of the neck of the Courd, and those set with the sharpe ends vp right, and both dunged and watered, both after being forth long and small Courds. And the seedes which lie in the middle of the belly of the Courd, set with the blunt ends vp right in the earth, and both dunged and watered, do after send forth big and large Courds. And of those doe men after they be dried, make bottles to cary Wine, Ale, or Beere in, to refresh the body withall, in the trauell of any long iorney. And those seedes which lie in the bottome of the Courd, set with the great and blunt ends vp right in the earth, doe after cause both wide and large Courds. And sowing all the seedes together in one hole, you must after they be wel grown aboue the earth, stay them vp with props made for the nonce. And if the yong plants be molested with Greene flies of the garden, then set by them the branches of the herbe Dargany, and it will either kill them by lighting there-vpon, or at the least cause them that they increase no moze. And to haue Courds to grow without seedes (like as was taught before) of the Cucumber, then lay your seedes for thre daies before, either in Sauaine oyle (as Palladius writeth) or in the iuice of the hearbe named Culex. And the like may be caused. if

that the first stalkes sprung vp, bee so digged about, that the head of the same may appeare, and as it alwaies groweth vp, so to be digged bare of the earth: and this doe the third time, if neede shall so require. And this also doe, that as the branches spring forth, and runne along on the earth, they like cut away of them, preserving alwaies the principall, and this will so cause them to bring forth Gourds without seedes, having onely but a soft pulpe within. And now to have either timely Gourds or Cucumbers; then at the beginning of the spring put fine sifted earth, either into an old basket, or deepe earthen pan, and the same wel mixed with dung, sprinkle or moisten a little with water, and after set the same abroad in warme and sunny daies, and in a smal rain; but at the setting of the Sun, set the same againe vnder some couert, and this often doe, in watering it in the meane whiles vntill all the frosts and cold season be past. And after that when a faire day commeth, then set the whole pan or basket to the bzim in the earth well dressed & trimmed, couering and raking the earth ouer and about it, and after ordering the same (as afoze is taught) you shall so haue the timely fruits, either of $\frac{1}{2}$ Gourd, or cucumber. And the same also you may the sooner procure, & with lesser trauell and paines, if that you cut off the rank and superfluous shoots, either of the gourds or cucumbers, for by that meanes will they speedilier send forth their fruits. And to make diuers formes like to birds or beasts, & sundry perfect letters (of the Romane fashion) on your Gourds or Cucumbers, then take the yong fruit of either, as the same groweth on the branches, inclosing into a mould of the like bignes to the fruit, in the which let be impainted deep or hollow, in the forme that you desire to haue after on your Gourds or Cucumber, and the like shall then appeare when as the fruit is come to his full growth and bignes. But further of this may you learne in my litle treatise of Natural and Artificiall conclusions, where I write more at large, both of the same & the compositions of sundrie strange formes of apples, and other fruits, with other pleasant (and that right marueilous) matters to read and heare. And now to come to our former mat-

ter in these: if that you desire to haue long and smal gourds, then take a long Cane bozed thozow, or a hollow pipe, into which put the very yong gourd, & let the same so hang, which after wil stretch out all the length of the hollow pipe, soz that y matter which should run into a bzeadth, is by that meanes sent into a length. And Pliny writeth, that he saw a Gourds of 9. foot long. And a like conclusion of making the Gourds of such a length may be done, if that you set vnder the Gourds a pan or boule of water, a hand bzeadth or somewhat moze beneath the ends hanging down, which in the next day following you shall find stretched out to the water, and thus setting the vessell deeper, they will shoot out longer. And on this wise you may make them shoot out of a marueilous length, without any other craft or practise of the like. But if you take away the vessell of water, then doe they after bend and turne vpward, so much do the Gourds loy in the moisture, & otherwise refuse the dzyeth. And Pliny writeth, that the gourds do so mightily hate oyle, that setting a boule or other vessell of the same vnder them, in the like sort as you did the water, will in the next morrow be turned or bended another way. And if not turned on this wise, then will they be bended (in disdainning the oyle) into the fashion of a hooke, which you shall manifestly trie in the space of one night. And here learn, that both Columella and Florentius giue speciall warning, that no such person hauing then the monethly course, do handle or come nere, either to the gourd or cucumber as they grow, soz by the handling or appochoing nere to them, they sone after wither away.

And if such also being in the like case dook: then but look on them, they either kill the yong ones with their looke, or cause them to grow vnpleasant, or else corrupted and withered. And those Gourds which you minde to keepe soz seedes, let them be hanged by with their stems or stalkes vnto winter time, and dyed as they hang, either in the heat of the sun, or in the smoke (as Palladius writeth) soz y otherwise the seedes will putrifie and serue after to no vse. And if you mind to keepe the fresh and greene Cucumbers and Gourds a long time,

then hang them within a Hoghead, or other vessell of white wine Lees, not yet turned and sower, in such sozt, that they be wholly couered with Lees.

And in the like condition & maner you may pzeferue them a long time, if that you lay them into a bzyne pzeared for the only purpose. Also the Courdes and Cucumbers be the like pzeferred for a long time, if that they be hanged high in a pipe hauing vineger in it, or at y least so high, that they touch not the vineger in no wise. And the vessell besides seruing to this vse, ought to be well pitched about, that the vineger bzeath not forth, in that the vineger is so penetrable, thzough the thinnesse of the parts. And the Courdes and Cucumbers may best be kept fresh and faire all the yeare thozow without putrifying, if that you put them into the distilled water of vineger, which will not after suffer them to putrisse, but maintaine their fresh estate, as hath often beene tried of the skilfull pzdicationers. And besides these, if that you cut off yong ones whyles they be yet tender, and scauld them in hot water, and after lay them forth to coole all a night thozow, being cleare and calme, and on the mozrow put into a sharpe bzyne, which will so kzepe them fresh a long time. And now by all meanes aboue taught, you may kzepe Cucumbers and Grurds fresh all the winter thozow. And you may besides all these make your Courds laratiue, and to purge the belly, if that you infuse the seedes for a day and night, in the liquo2 made of Kubarbe, Scamanie, Coloquintida, Agaricke, and such like purges: and after this, sowe the seedes in the earth, in like order as befoze was taught. And to make them pleasant of taste and smell, order the seedes in like sozt befoze the setting of them, as you were taught in the other chapters going befoze.

The Physicke helps.

The Gourd is colde and moist in the second degree, and the seedes doe serue to the vse of medicine: and the Gourd also is not to be eaten raw, for that the same is so vnsauourie meat, and therefore it ought the rather to be sodden, roasted, or fried before the eating, as writeth *Galen*. Now the seedes
cleane

cleane picked from the vpper skin, & sodden in barley water, and after strained and drunke, doth helpe the diseases in the liuer, the kidneis, and the bladder, and the impostumes of the breast, and prouoketh vrine: and if a sicke person shal abhor to drink of this water, then may you make a sirope of it with suger, for that the same so greatly profiteth vnto all agues. And for the heat of the liuer, take the iuice of the pieces, and meat of the Gourds, and temper the same with milk and vinegar, and after dipping a linnen cloth in the same, apply the liuer without, and it much helpeth. And the gourds also ought to be hanged vp & dried, as afore was specified, and the winter approaching, the seeds ought then to be taken forth and rubbed with salt, that so the clammy humors may be auoided. And the kernels also ought to be laid in a drie place, lest the moisture corrupt the feedes. And the seedes may well be kept for three yeares in good efficacie. And the meate and piece of the Gourd laid plaster-wise to the fore part of the head of yong children, doth so take away the inflammation and great heate of the braine and head. And the iuice of the same anointed on hot burning gouts, doeth asswage the burning heat of the same, and also qualifieth the inflammations of the eies. Also the iuice pressed out of the meat of the Gourd, & the same dropped into the eares, doth asswage the burning heat of the. And to the same vse it may either be applied alone, or els mixed with oile of Roses, and so dropped hot into the eares. And the same iuice mixed with the oile of Roses, & anointing the ridgebone & loynes with the same, doth asswage the burning heat of the Ague. And the same doth also help the burning heat of that griefe called the holy fire. Also the ashes made of the rinds of the Gourds, and strawed on the vlcers of shamefast places, now grown into a rotnenness, doth not onely cleanse, but bringeth them into a scarre: which ashes strawed on a burning, doth marueilously heale the same. And the decoction of the meat of the Gourd, with a little honie and Niter, and that drunk, doth loose gently the belly. And if any making hollow the raw Gourd, and doth after fill the same with wine,

& setteth it abroad for a space, & that on the morrow drinketh moderately of it fasting, it doth also gently loose the belly. And the raw meat of the Gourd shred, and laid plasterwise on swellings and hard risings of the flesh, doth greatly assuage them. And the Gourd full ripe, ought to be distilled together with the seedes, and finely shred. And now the distilled water mixed with suger, doth cease the thirst, helpeth the cough proceeding of a cold cause, and looseth the belly. And the same water drunk twice a day, for twenty or forty daies together, to the quantity of three ounces at a time, doth helpe the stone of the kidneis. And in like manner drunke for ten daies together, prouoketh vrine, and cleanseth the reins and bladder. Moreover, the same water also drunke, doth qualifie the burning of the ague. These hitherto of the properties of the Gourd.

Of the ordering and care of the Beane of Egypt.

Chap. 63.

The Beane of Egypt ought to be sown or set in the month of february, and togeth also to growe in a moist place fat and watrish, & to come vp among running springs, but for the quality of the ground, it greatly forceth not, so that the same be alwaies watered, as need doth require. And it may in a manner beare continually leaues, if the same be defended from the cold, by some little couer or shed, standing vnder all the winter time. And now the place from whence the slips of the most plants be daily slipped off from the stalks, for the intent to be set againe, will sufficiently instruct any meane witted person, how at times conuenient he should set those againe in the earth. And where at this time, we doe omit, and ouerpasse sundry Bosie and Garland flowres, with hearbes profitable to be eaten, it is, for that they require no other manner or diligence of dressing and ordering, then the former taught. And many also of these come vp of their owne accord, and sundry others, which delight in the like order of planting and sowing as the former. And therefore let this

Treatise

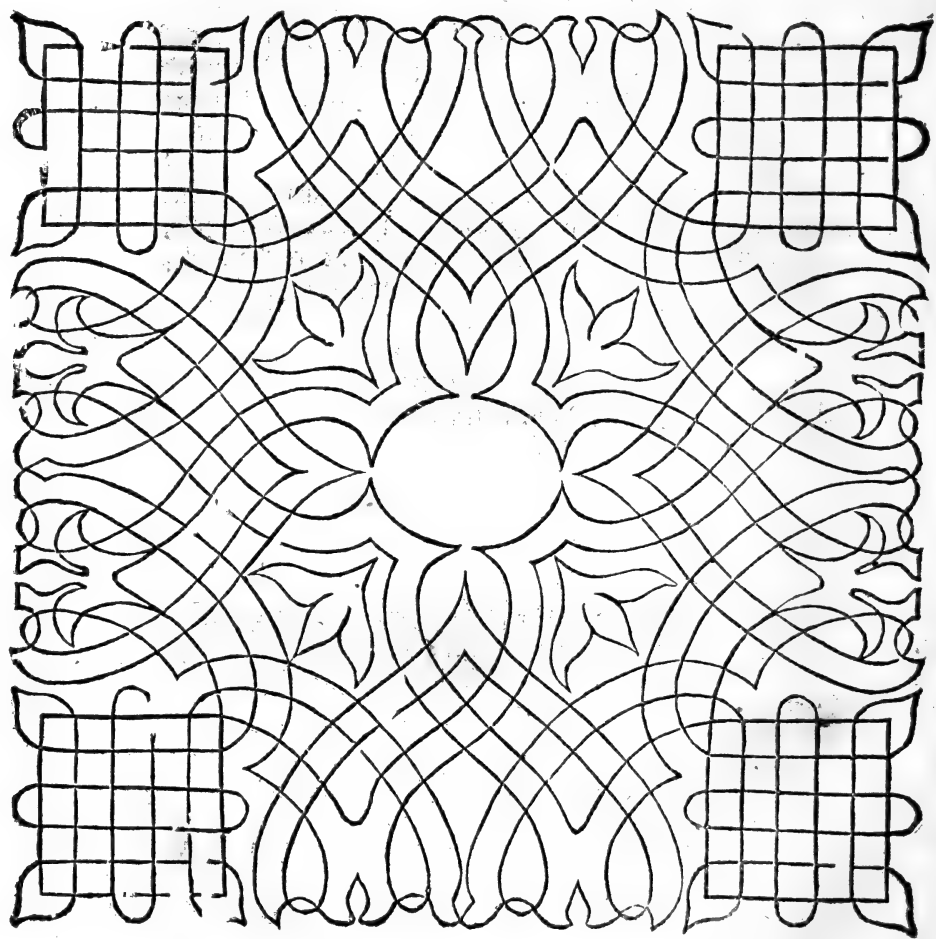
Treatise fauourably paffe, which I meane hearefter to in-
crease with sundry pleasant flowres, and profitable hearbes,
needfull to be sown and set in the most Gardens. And in the
meane time looke for a proper Treatise (and that right profit-
table) of the most marueilous gouernment, vse, and commo-
dity of the Honie Bees, which I adioyne to this treatise of
Gardening, in that the same (after my iudgement) seemeth
belonging to the matter of the Garden. And this after my
simple skill, I haue reduced and brought into English, gathe-
red first by a learned wyter out of the woorkes of ancient
men of Husbandrie, and set forth for a thorough instruction,
and perfitte furniture in a large Garden: And besides these,
for the great profite and healthfull commoditie to the bodie,
both of the Honey and Waxe, which the Bees cunning-
ly gather of the sweet flowres of the garden. And
for this cause Bees ought diligently to be
placed, and carefully cherished in
the most Gardens.

(* * *)



A

A proper knot for a Garden, where is spare roome enough,
the which may be set either with Time or Iſope, at
the diſcretion of the Gardener.



CERTAINE
NECESSARY PRE-
cepts in the cutting vp, plucking a-
way, gathering and preserving, of the most
hearbcs, flowres, seedes, and rootes,
seruing especially to
Medicine.

CHAP. 64.

THose herbes which serue most for the pot to be boyled with meat, ought to be cut vp and gathered, when as they be well grown in height, and that with a sharpe knife, some what aboue the earth. But of sundry herbes be the leaues onely gathered, and that with the hand plucked vp, and broken off, when they be come (as it were) vnto their full growth: which be, the Lettuce, the Endiue, the Succory, the Woxtes, the Arach, the Clary, the Borage, Parigold leaues, Parcely, Colewort leaues, and such like. But in the winter time, the stalkes be wholly cut vp, leauing then no stems behinde. And besides, in all these aboue rehearsed, except the Parcely, the Fennell, the Sage, and certaine others: if that the stems or stalkes after they be well come, be then broken off or cut away, they wil continue the longer greene and without sading. And when any would vse any hearbes hot of qualitie, then let him rather gather the hearbes fresh and greene, then vse those being drie, for that the greene doe lesse heate, in that the moisture of those greene doth greatly mittigate the heat in them.

And for the onely vse of Sallets, gather your hearbes, being then very yong and tender buds, except of the Lettuce and Endiue, which after the minde of the Gardners, doe cate pleasanter being growen vnto a whitenesse, and then eaten yong and greene. And now those hearbes (for the vse of medicine) ought rather to be gathered and cut vp, when as they

be in a manner come vnto their growth, and that befoze the colour of the flowres begin to change, and the seeds somewhat appeare: And this also ought to be done in a cleare & warme day, and that they haue bene moistned with some shewers falling for two or thre daies befoze, so that they ought not to bee gathered when any raine, moisture, or wet deweis on them, nor being then drie parched with the heate of the Sunne, nor in a rainie and cloudie day, for any of these doe much hinder the keeping any time in their vertue.

Also they ought to bee gathered, when they bee full of iuice and fresh, and that not the smaller or bigger are to be chosen, but the meaner, and such besides which fall not to withering. And onely the tender toppes, the leaues, and flowres are to be gathered and dried in the shadowe, in a place open toward the South, not being moist and defended from the dust and smoke, and for the better defending and pseruing of them, to be put vp in bagges close bound at the mouth, and in boxes for that vse.

And they also keepe their strength and vertue for one whole yeare, so that they are to bee renewed euery yeare, vnlesse the hearbes bee gathered in such a yeare, that the season then shal be long without raine, and that the Summer following bee verie moist: for then may you rather vse those hearbes gathered in the drie Summer befoze, then those in the rainie yeare following. And the flowres for the vse of medicine ought then to be gathered, when as they be in greatest force, and full open abroad, vnlesse the Lilly, the flowres deluce, and Rose, which ought rather to bee gathered, when as they be not wholly opened: And they ought also in the like order to be dried and laid vp, as aboue was taught of the hearbes, and so they last also for a yeare in their strength and vertue.

And they ought besides to be renewed euery yeare, like as was taught befoze of the hearbes. And seedes ought to be gathered when they be thorowly ripe, and befoze they thed or fall off, and this also must be in a cleare and faire day.

Also

Also the fuller sêdes and not winckled, and such which kéepe the perfect sauour and taste of the kinde of the hearbe, are rather to bee gathered and kept, and dized in the like condition as the hearbes, and afterwaro put into glasses, or hanged vp in bagges, and this in a drie place, being frée from moisture.

And the fruits of the plants are to bee gathered, when as they be in their full ripenesse, and not befoze they beginne to fall off. And both the faller and waightier are to be chosen, which ought afterwaro to be dized in the Sunne, or in an Duen, by reason of the moisture contained in them.

And the rootes are to bee gathered in their apt places, and the best of euery kinde, and that the fruits be latelý fallen off, and the leaues of the stems begin to shed away, and this you must doe in a cleare day, for the great raine doeth weaken them, and filleth them full of moisture.

And the greater rootes may be kept for two yeares, but the lesser onely for a yeare, if they be hanged vp to drie in a shadowie place, and that from dust and smoke. And as touching the whole hearbe together, the same ought to be gathered when it shall come vp vnto the full growth.

And whatsoeuer are gathered in the decrease of the mone, be better to vse, and will longer be kept then those which be gathered in the increase of the mone. And the wortier herbs be those, and to greater effect, which kéepe their lively colour, stronger in sauour, and moze apparant in taste.

And the Roses and other flowres gathered in a faire and warme day, doe yeelde a sweeter distilled water, then those flowres which be gathered in a wet and clowdie day: and this distilled water besides lasteth longer and to better effect then that other of the contrary manner. And further learne, that from the foure and twenty day of the moneth of March vnto the foure and twenty day of June, are the leaues of all manner of hearbs most of strength and vertue, and do especially serue in that time to the vse of medicine. And from the xxiii. day of June, vnto the xxiii. of September, are the stems

and stalks in their full strength and vertue to the vse of medicine. And from the xxiii. day of September, vnto the xxv. of March againe, are the rootes of the most hearbes in their full strength and vertue to be ministred in medicines. And heere also learne, that the wilde herbes are stronger in vertue then the garden herbes, although the wilde be lesser in bignes, as Pliny writeth. And the wilde hearbes also growing vpon the hills and mountaines, bee farre stronger in effect then those wilde, growing in plaines & lower ground. And to conclude, all hearbes and seedes which moze aptly serue to the vse of medicine, ought rather to be kept and hanged vp in bags, but the flowres close stopped in narrow mouthed glasses, that the saour and strength of the flowres breath not forth, and that these also be set and hanged vp in shadowie places free from moisture, and from the dust and smoke. And the roots which you mind to keepe green, are better reserued and kept in light sand, except they be such rootes which be rather kept dried, and are also better p̄serued in a drie and shadowie place, as aboue was taught. But the seedes of the Larkes and the Onions, and of certaine other hearbs, be better kept in their huskes, then the most seedes of the other hearbes. And heere learne the opinion of the learned Physitian Montagnana, in the gathering of the rootes, flowres, and fruits, seruing to the vse of medicine, which affirmeth that the roots ought not to be gathered vntill the fall of the leaues, and this especially from the middle of September, vnto the beginning of Nouember, and the flowres are to be gathered from the middle of May, to the beginning of Iuly, and ought to be gathered according to the diuersity of times of the hearbs.

Thus endeth the second Booke of the care, ordering, and secrets of the most hearbs of the Garden.



A
PROFITABLE IN-
STRVCTION OF THE
PERFECT ORDERING OF BEES,
WITH THE MARVEILOVS NATVRE,
property, and gouernement of them : and the ne-
cessary vses, both of their Hony and Waxe,
seruing diuersly, as well in inward as outward
causes: gathered out of the best vriters.

TO WHICH IS ANNEXED A
Treatise intituled : Certaine Husbandly Coniectures
of dearth and plenty for euer, and other matters
also meet for Husbandmen to know, &c.

By THOMAS HILL *Londoner.*



 *Imprinted at London by H.B.*

1608.



*The Authors out of which this
Treatise is gathered.*

C. Plinius.
Aristotle.
Albertus.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Theophrastus.
Guilhelmus de Conchis.
Galen.
Paule Aegineta.
• Cornelius Agrippa.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And sundry others.





¶ To the worshipfull Master M.
Gentleman, Thomas Hill wisheth
all health and felicity.



S it hath beene, and is yet (worshipfull Sir) a trade commonly vsed among most men, to chuse out from a great number, some one vnder whose name and title they may publish their workes: Euen so I (following the steps of the learned, though in all other points most inferiour) hauing finished this little Treatise of Bees, and casting with my selfe vnto whom I might present it, found my selfe much bounden vnto your worship, both for your gentlenes which I haue of late tasted, and also for your friendship which I finde alwaies readie towards mee. And therefore hauing none other waies to recompence the very least part of your courtesie and gentleness, thought it best to gratifie your worship with such a simple gift as mine abilitie will suffer mee to bestowe vpon such a friend. And although Sir, this Treatise is farre dissonant from your studies, yet considering your earnest desire to knowledge and learning: and againe pondering the pleasantnesse of the matter, thought this might bee made a recreation for your grauer studies. For when your minde shal be searching for profound reasons, and oppressed with deepe cogitations, then taking and reading this little Pamphlet, it will bring a forgetfulness vnto your former wearinesse, and cause a new delight vnto your minde:
For

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

For heerein may you see, first the marueilous gouernement of the Bees, through the onely instinct of Nature, as in their obedience to their King, and other officers, in punishing the idle loyterers, in cherishing the true labourers, in their manner of fighting, with such like a great many, as it is wonderfull to read, and almost vncredible to beleewe: Secondly, the liuely effects and commodities that arise of their Hony and Waxe: and lastly, how profitable they are for the common-wealth, and how necessary for mans vse. I might heere speake much in the praise of the Bee, which all I will omit, seeing onely mine intent is to shew my selfe mindfull of your good turnes and benefiits, desiring you to take this in good part, which proceedeth from a wel willing mind. And I am sorie, that at this present I had none other matter more worthy to haue gratified your worshippinge withall: but that wanteth in power, aboundeth in good will. Thus troubling your worship no longer, I commit you to the keeping of the Almighty, praying him to increase in you al vertue and godlines, and to grant you the long yeares of Nestor.

Yours most bounden,

THOMAS HILL.



The Preface into the instruction of Bees.



Although (gentle Reader) I haue not giuen thee any labour of mine owne, but rather haue collected the sayings and writings of many antient Authors, yet I trust they shall be well accepted of thee without offence. For as he that setteth forth vnto the view and reading of all men, such knowledge as by his long studie and experience he hath gotten, is worthy to haue his due reward and commendation: euen so hee is not to be discommended, who painefully reuoluing the bookes and volumes of many and diuers antient writers, reduceth them into one little treatise, for the commodity and profite of the simple & vnlearned sort, for whose onely sakes I haue travelled in the translation of this worthy matter, touching the right vsage and handling of Bees: a thing verie rare, and seldome scene in the English tongue, and yet verie presuable for a Common-wealth, and commonly used among the poore husband-men, though not in euery point as they ought to be, yet according to their knowledge and experience. But I, to the intent that a further learning might be added to their skill, haue so travelled therein, that I trust their knowledge shall be increased, and such as haue no knowledge at all, may be instructed without any other teaching. I haue ioyned this little Treatise vnto my booke of Gardening, for that most men doe ioyne them both together, as when they place their Bees in their Gardens, whereas they may with lesse paine and easilier gather of the sweet smelling stoures, their Hony, and Waxe. And for all these my paines (gentle Reader) I craue nought else of thee, but to giue me that which of dutie in a manner I ought to haue: for if thou doest receiue any commoditie or fruit, either by this, or by any other Treatise hereto annexed, which hath to name the Husbandly coniectures, with sundry rules of Physicke, then giue me the rewarde of thy good report, and friendly accepting of these two Treatises: and if not, yet accept mine endenours in good part, which be meant to do thee good. And thus leauing (gentle reader) to trouble thee farther, I commit thee to God, who giue thee the furtherance of knowledge, both in these and all other needfull Arts.

(*) (*) (*)

A necessary Table, setting forth the Contents of these two Treatises.

These are treated of in the first Treatise.

- VV** Hy Bees are named to be creasted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed or rather pleighted : what worke the swarme new gathered in the Hiue doe first take in hand, and whether they may liue after their stings be gone. Chap. I.
- Who first taught the preparation and increasfing of Bees, and found out the vse of hony. chap. 2.
- How Bees do naturally engender. chap. 3.
- Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name Drone Bees. chap. 4.
- Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue any blood within them. chap. 5.
- Of the great vtility and profit of Bees to mans vse. chap. 6.
- Of the care and diligence of Bees. chap. 7.
- Of the marucilous gouernment of the king of Bees, and of the obedience which they vse to him. chap. 8.
- What kind of Bees the best, & rather to be chosen. chap. 9.
- Where hiues of Bees ought especially to be placed. chap. 10.
- What things Bees do chiefly abhor & greatly hate. cap. 11.
- By what signes men may know when the Bees are diseased and how they may be cured. chap. 12.
- What manner of person the keeper of Bees ought to be. chap. 13.
- By what meanes the swarme commeth forth, and may be preferued from flying away. chap. 14.
- Of the Bees new settled in a swarme together, and taken and recouered againe. chap. 15.
- Which are the best and fittest Hiues for Bees. chap. 16.
- Of the cleanness and sweetnes of the keeper of Bees, and how the Hiues ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. chap. 17.
- How

The Table.

How Bees lacking hony, may be fed in the time of their necessity.	chap.18.
How the dead Bees may be restored to life againe.	chap.19.
Of the battels that the Bees haue sometimes amongst themselves.	chap.20.
How Bees lost, may be recouered & found again.	chap.21.
That the Bees sting no person that commeth neare to their Hiues.	chap.22.
When and how the Hiues ought to be gelded.	chap.23.
What the hony is, and how from the Hiues the same may be prepared to vse.	chap.24.
Which hony is accounted best.	chap.25.
Of the venemous hony, and of the wonderfull hony of Creta.	chap.26.
Of the miraculous worthines of hony.	chap.27.
How profitable the vse of hony is in medicine.	chap.28.
Of the drinke of hony, which they call the Mulse water, or sweet water of the Romans.	chap.29.
Of the drinke <i>Oenomet</i> , which is made of pure wine and honic.	chap.30.
Of the singular water of hony, gotten by order of distillation.	chap.31.
An other manner of distilling the hony, more at large taught.	chap.32.
The manner of distilling a water from hony, named the Quintessence.	chap.33.
The manner of drawing and making waxe of the combes.	chap.34.
What waxe is best allowed, &c.	chap.35.
Of the great commodity and benefite of waxe in medicines.	chap.36.
Of that which is a stay of the combes, and made for a defence of Bees.	chap.37.
How to make waxe white.	chap.38.
How to make red waxe.	chap.39.
How to drawe a very profitable oyle out of waxe, for sundrie vses.	chap.40.

The Table.

Another way of drawing the oyle of waxe most noble, and doth marueilously helpe the cold Gout, the Sciatick, the swelling of the legs, and all other griefs of a cold cause. chap.41.

These described in the other Treatise.

Certaine Husbandly coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer. chap.1.

An euerlasting Prognostication of the state and condition of euery yeare, by the onely Kalends of Ianuary, written by the ancient and learned *Leopol. Aust.* and other for the commodity of the wise husbandmen. chap.2.

How to foreknow the state of the yeare by the onely rising of the Dogge starre, out of the husbandrie of *Diophanes.* chap.3.

Other profitable instructions, right necessarie for husbandmen to know. chap.4.

A most profitable rule for the preferuation of mans health, thorow-out the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the mind of diuers learned men of the Vniuersity of Padua. chap.5.

Of the falling sick on any of the weeke daies, out of that ancient Physition *Hippocrates.* chap.6.

Of those manifest signes, which declare raine to follow. chap.7.

Of those manifest signes which declare faire weather to follow. chap.8.





¶ The first Treatise setteth forth the
strange gouernment, property, and bene-
fite of Bees, with the commoditie of their Hony
and Waxe, which serue vnto many good vses, aswell in
outward as inward causes applied: gathered out of *Pliny, Al-*
bertus, Varro, Columella, Palladius, Aristotle, Theophra-
stus, Cardanus, Guilhelms de Conchis, A-
grippa, and diuers other singu-
lar Authors.

Why Bees are named to be creasted or parted betweene, or
as it were ringed, or rather pleighted. What worke the
swarm new gathered in the hiue first taketh in hand, and
whether they may liue after their stings be gone. Chap. I.

DLinie nameth Bees cleft beasts, because of
the diuision or parting betweene of the head
and shoulders: and Aristotle nameth them
pleighted or ringed, in that their bodies are
deuided with pleights and rings. And most
men knowe, that the Bees haue neither si-
nells, bones, flesh, gristle, backe-bone, nor fat, but are onely
created of certaine mixture, being a meane betwæne these,
and hauing a very few intrals. And againe no man needeth
to doubt, but that the Bees be a kind of beasts greatly to be
set by for mans vse, and for mans prouision, are nourished of
the aire: passing thorow the deuided places, which they by
great diligence and care preserve from being stopped, so as
sone as they be stopped, they shortly after die, like as the same

We may learne, when any hapneth to fall oꝛ light into Dyle, which straight way after die thꝛough the oyle stopping then their powlers. They haue and flie with foure wings, that they may the better cary in their bellies y^e wings of reuengment. For when two of them strue together in sight, then do they holde and keepe their wings in their mouthes by a greedy desire, oꝛ foꝛ eagernes sake. Now after the seuen stars named virgilix, be once risen in sight aboue our horizon, then do they hide them in their proper holes, so that they go seldome after abroad until the beane do bud, and if they chance to begin at any time to flie abroad, when as a faire day moueth them foꝛward, then slacke they no such daies after ward, but occupie themselves: and first they pꝛepare & make their combs, which they fashion into apt houses, oꝛ rather cels of waxe: after this they haue yong, and then begin they to gather hony. They liue also the longer by hauing their wings, foꝛ that once gon, oꝛ taken away, they die soꝛth with thꝛough the lacke of their intrals, which they lose together with their wings.

Who first taught the preparation and increasing of Bees, and found out the vse of Hony. Chap. 2.

The report goeth, that one Aristomachus first found out and taught the increasing of bees, whom Pliny writeth to be so earnest in the same, that sitting apart al other affairs, he only studied night and day how he might best intreat & vse bees according to their kind. But others ascribe this inuention to one Thassius, who (as they say) deserved no lesse commendation, both foꝛ his diligence and skill among bees: but this he especially followed in the field, and that far from the towne. And of this the common people (as by a nickname) no more named him Thassius, but Agrius, foꝛ his wild oꝛ rather strange life, which he then led in the field, whom Plinie also affirmeth to haue written a booke of the increasing and multiplying of Bees. And Columella ascribeth this inuention to the inhabitants of the hill (named Hymetus) being the country of Attica, foꝛ there (saith he) was one Arithonus, who taught (as men write) the true and perfect ordering of them. Pliny again ascribeth the inuention of hony to one Aristeus, a man

man of Athens. Diodorus Siculus in the first booke of his woorks writeth, that Curetes, a people of Creta, did first find out the hony. Macrobius ascribeth the same to one Saturnus, others to the Thessalians: and many to Melissus an ancient king of Creta, others to Naxus liber pater, thus writing that Liber hath obtained the reward for finding out of hony.

How Bees do naturally engender. Chap. 3.

First the Bees proceed of Bees by the actuall doing together, after which they lay egges, sitting upon them as the hens do on their eggs. And when they haue sit on them for the space of 45. daies, then do they hatch their yong ones, which yong (at the first) come forth much like to white wormes, except the king, who onely as he is hatched hath wings. At the first time one of them hatcheth fve yong together, the next time seuer, and so seuer and seuer, untill he cometh to one at a time, because the abundance which is in them, doth in the continuance of time weaken. In the time of their sitting, they make much noise to get them heat withall. And about the sides of the combs, be sometimes greater bees byed, which men for their sound and noise doe properly name Trumpefers, and they also haue whole hornes, of which come the bastard bees. There be also other bees bigger in bodie, much like to the kings, but they be idle and haue no sting, because of the heauines of their body. All which kinds, Guilhelmus de Conchis did obserue in the Hives of a certaine Consull of Rome, which properly were made of very thinne and cleare horne. Some write that bees are also engendred and breed monstrously, and that contrary to nature, without the mutual coniunction; if that a whole calfe be buried in the earth, & there lie rotting whiles the wind blow out of the West, so by that meanes as writeth Maro, doth the same breed Bees. And not vnlike to this doth Cornelius Agrippa, in his first booke de Occulta Philosophia, and Hiero. Cardanus in his 9. booke of subtilties write, that of a rotten Horse doe waspes proceed: of an Asse, Humble bees: of a Mule, Hornets, of the hair of a woman (hauing then her monthly courses) serpents: and of Creuitres (the shels plucked off) Scorpions.

Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name

Drone Bees. Chap. 4.

THe Drone Bées (as writeth Pliny) are vnperfect Bées, without sting, and the least wearie, yet be they verie heauy of body, and slow in doing their busines: they also doe the seruices and trauels of the true Bées, although the right and perfect Bees doe rule and gouerne them, yea & put them sozmost in their labours, so that if they happen to be slowe in their doings, then doe the right bées punish them without pity. Also these do helpe the right Bées, so well in their workes as in their breeding, soz that the multitude of them, cause the moze heat and warmth together. And how much the greater the multitude of them shalbe, so much moze wil the increase come of the swarm. When the honey wareth ripe, then are the Drone Bées diuen sozth, and the kind also of these are onely seene abroad in the Spzyng time.

Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue blood

any in them. Chap. 5.

Now some affirm, that the clouen beaſts draw no breath, in that they haue not the fan of the heart, which is the lights oz lungs: soz as they write, nothing without them can breathe. But Aristotle writeth, that the same is possible among Bees, hauing the Ring (although they haue no bladder) to breathe by their sting. And the Bées haue no blood, because they haue neither heart noz lungs: yet Pliny affirmeth, that nothing done by nature may be thought oz iudged incredible, soz the same is fully perswaded in wise men, that Bees haue a certaine liuely moisture, like as the Cattle in the sea, which hath a kind of incke in it, and is as the iuice of it, with the which the Diers (at this day) do make their purple coloz.

Of the great vtilitie and profite of Bees vnto

mans vse. Chap. 6.

A Great profit riseth by bées, if they be set in a conuenient and fit place, and that both carefully & wisely guided as Pliny writeth in his 11. booke, where he willeth, that of all oſther clouen beaſts, the bées are principally to be cherished, because to mans vse they gather a subtile and whollome iuice, being

being very swete, and besides they frame (by a marvellous skill and cunning) their cottages of war vnto mans vse, that no worke-man (be hee neuer so ingenious) can doe the like. The profit also comming by them in short time, if the weather hindereth not, is so great, that they increafe in a short time into many swarmes, which swarmes againe increafe others, so that the first swarmes increafed, they especially thrust forth from them in the moneth of May or June, by which meanes they cause a great increafe of them. As Varro affirmeth the same of two head Gentlemen in Spaine, which onely by the meanes of their Bees, gained yearly ten thousand pound (but I rather thinke five thousand pound, which also is very much.) And here is to be noted, that the swarmes of five yeares olde, doe seldome increafe after other swarmes of themselves, although in ware they giue a great yelde and gaine to the owners.

Of the great care and diligence of the Bees. Chap. 7.

Certaine Bees, as the skillfull practisers doe write, stand in the day time at the mouthes of the hives, diligently looking to their busines, like warders placed at the gates of a Castle, that they may so defend in safegard whom they will within. In the night time they settle themselves to rest vnto the morning, vntill one of them by humming twice or thrice about, doth so stirre them forward to flie out after the other. For if they happen to keepe themselves in the morning within the hives, then doeth the same declare a tempest to ensue that day. But being a cleare and faire morning, then do they flie forth, and returne againe to their hives, laden with the substance of the flowres on their legs for their businesse, and this especially doe the ponger bees, so that the other bees besides do either cary the water in their bills, or on the soft molines of the whole body. The elder bees remaining still within do also follow their busines, in diligently laying by, & aptly dressing the same, as they would dispose their kindly lood. Such as be sluggish and not labouring, they diligently note, which for their sluggishnes they bitterly punish to death. And flying abroad in a mightie wind, they marvellously stay and

guide themselves, by weighing their bodies down with little stones, caried in their legges. They at the evening coming to rest, doe make lesse and lesse noise in the hieue, vntill one of them flieth about, which by a like order as he moued them forward in the morning, euen so by the same noise and humming, doth he procure them to take their rest, and to be all silent within the hieue. If the Bees happen to scatter in their flying abroad, then doe they call and gather them into a swarme by the helpe of making a shrill sound, either with pan, bason, or some loud cimbal. They also follow their king whither soeuer he taketh his flight, who being wearie, and not farther able to flie, they carry him among them.

Wherefore that the king may not often attempt forth with the swarme for feare of losing them, the skilful practisers wil, the wings of the kings be broken off: which feeling himselfe thus deprived of his wings, wil not after attempt to flie forth of his bounds, but remaining still within, will cause the other Bees to abide continually with him, not leauing the hieue at any time after. They also haue counsels priuily, and rulers among them. And as Aristotle declareth the Bees to be the cleanliest among all other beasts, because in flying abroad they shed their dung from them, lest any fauor or stinke of their dung be felt in their cottages or holes. If these want honny at any time, then do they either kill or dye quite away the drone Bees.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the King of Bees, and of the obedience which they vse to him. Chap. 8.

Nature hath not onely committed her lawes to books, the which men may learne by, but hath especially set forth conditions & properties, as for an example of the like by the Bees, whose kings for doubt of reuenging, haue by the prouidence of nature no stings: whereby is to be understood, that kings ruling in power, through the lacke of their stings may be by that meanes the slower to hurt and offer reuengement. Yet some affirme the kings to haue stings, but they suppose them not to vse their stings. And of this Pliny maketh a doubt whether the king be armed as other Bees, or lacketh a sting. Which

Which Columella putteth out of doubt, writing of the king, that he hath no sting, vnles any perhaps think that big head (as it were) which the king carrieth in his belly, to be his sting with the which they vse at no time to sting or hurt any body. This king onely doe Bées reuerence and honour, in such sort, that any of them is obedient and very readie to doe whatsoeuer he assigneth them vnto. Also this obedience and seruice which they vse to their king, they doe not the same for feare of punishment, but onely of a loue which they owe vnto him. They punish one another in such sort, that after their stings be lost, they die forthwith. Aristotle writeth of two maner of kings, the one (as he affirmeth) to be red, which he iudgeth the better: the other king blacke of colour, which he confesseth to be lesse of body: yet howsoeuer the kings be, they are notwithstanding farre bigger of body then the honny Bées, and haue a brighter & goodlier head then the other Bées, yet shorter wings. So that their king created among them, goeth not any time forth of the hieue, without the whole swarme follow him. The king flying forth of the hieue at any time, the other follow him, in such sort that each couet to flie next him, and togeth to be seene of the king in office: and where so euer the king settleth or resteth him, there be other bées placed like strong holds or castles about him. About the king also be placed certain rulers, which wait vpon him by daily authority. If any hapneth (as writeth Pliny) to breake off the kings right wing, then from the king wil not the swarme after depart, as the like was rehearsed before. Besides these, the bées haue a marueillous order among them: if their king happen to die, they will bitterly mourne for his death, and for the lacke of an other, as such which cannot be guided and ruled without a king among them: and thus they be in continuall mourning: So that (for the time) they carry no foode into their hieues, nor flie forth, but with a sadde bewayling and humming after their king, they heape thicke together about the dead body, and vnlesse another king increaseth by little and little among them, they die with hunger. Their king laboureth not, but as the other flie forth, hee in the

meanetime (as an exhorter) moueth and encourageth forward euery one to his worke, by his flying about in the Hieue.

What kind of Bees are best, & rather to be chosen. Chap. 9.

In this point, & for true knowledge of these, doth M. Varro describe those bees to be best which be of small bodie, and diuers and round, because they be earnest in laboꝝ, and make a thin hony, and better indure labour, and gather their hony on hils: but the worser bees gather their hony of the garden flowres only, which be somewhat long of body, like to wasps. Virgil doeth especially commend the small bees, being somewhat long, light, and cleanly in their businesse, and glistering like gold: and the greater and rounder bee is discommended of al writers. Although the fierce bees are very ill, yet is their irefulness a note of the better bees, which may easily be appeased by the daily hanting among them: for if the keepers doe often handle the hieues, then doe they become gentle in short time. The bees also indure, if they be diligently looked vnto, for the space of ten yeares, & beyond this age no swarm can passe, although the keepers supply the hieues yearly with yong bees in the stead of the old dead: for in the tenth yeare, in a maner, by the generall death of them, the vniuersall kind of the whole hieue is then consumed. And therefore that this may not happen thorow all the hieues in that place, you must alwaies increase your hieues with yong bees, which diligently hieue in the spring time, or beginning of Summer, when as the swarmes be first and new thrust forth of the Hieues: & so may the number of your hieues be increased. Again, some write that in the countrey of Pontus, the best bees be white, because they giue their yeld of hony twice in a moneth. And Guilielmus de Conchis affirmeth, the best bees to be about Thermedoone in Capadocia, abiding alwaies in the earth, for that those doe build and make a triple yeld of waye, and giue also most abundance of hony. The aforesaid Varro affirmeth, those bees to be in health, which often keepe and be in swarme together, that be cleanly, and can do their busines and worke alike, and that quicke and light in the same, being

being neither hairy, no, foule of body, or appearing dustie; such also as be not ouer-cleane of body, no, that out of any of their cottages no dead bees be carried: but the contrary to be both euill and vnprofitable. Palladius declareth, that the best bees may be known by the fulnes and emptines of their vessels, so; if the hives be full, then those bees doeth he best commend: if the hives be nothing so full stuffed, those bees doth he greatly disallow: and he also praiseeth those bees which excell or passe other in the loudnesse of humming, or doe abound in the great hant of the swarme, not brought to the hives from far places, so that there may be such agreement, that they be not after scared away with the newones of the aire and place.

Where the hives of Bees ought especially to be placed. Chap. 10.

ARistotle willethe the hives of bees in the winter time to be placed in a warme place, & in the hot season of summer in a cold place. Palladius Rutilius in his first booke of husbandry teacheth, that the fittest place for bees, is that which is in a Garden, not far, or rather neare to the owners house, which by that meanes suffereth not the windes, no, the access of thieues or beasts: which also nourisheth trees growing of the southside of the place, the better to defend the cold aire from them, and cleare springs or faire riuer water running by.

Columella willethe the hives to be set open towards the South, far from noise and hant of people or beasts, neither in a hot no, cold place, so; either of these do molest and harme the bees. Also that the hives stand in the bottome of a valley, or if not so possible, then placed neare to the valley, the better and easier for the bees to bring their food gathered to their hives; and in any case far from stinking puddles, ditches, dung-heapes, and such like filthy stinckes, which greatly annoy and endamage the bees being neare hand to their hives. M. Varro wyting in his second booke vnto a huswife of the Country, willethe also to set the hives close to her house and vnder some shed, and that farre from the noise of soymes,

which

which is meant from a greue or wood, lest thow the wood or greue nere hand, the same may giue a sounding noise, like to that which men commonly name the Cecio, which sound in very deed the Bees do greatly hate. Virgil willetth bushy trees to be planted and stand right before their hives, like as the Pear tree is, the Peach tree, the Oak tree, many kinds of Apple trees, the Birch tree, Holly tree, the Jay tree also, not allowed for their goodnes, but because the same giveth out much hony, and al other trees which beare no bitter flowers. And he willetth these plants and hearbes to grow nere hand, as the Rosemary, the red and damaske Rose, the white Lilly, the Violets, the flow2 delute, the Organy, the Time, the running Tyme, the Sauery, sweet Marigame, the Saffron flower, which colour eth the hony & maketh it smell sweet, the beane flowers, the french beane flowers, the Pellilof flowers, the herbe Balme, the white Poppy flowers, the Betony flowers, the Borage and Uglosse flowers, and many other sweet and whollsome flowers not here named. But the Bore tree, the Pasticke tree, the Deg or Catten tree, or as some suppose, the long and hie Cherry tree, they greatly hate, for that tasting of the flowers of any of these, they die forthwith. Varro willetth standing waters to be nere their hives, and so shallow, that small stones throwne into them, may appeare about the water, to serue in stead of bridges for their often recourse vnto them, and that they may aptly stretch their wings abroad on the stones at the heat of the sun. The standing for Hives ought to bee three foote distant from the ground, and wittily stopped about with redde clay, lest vermins and mice creepe into the hives, and spoile the Hony combs. The hives also ought to be set a little asunder the one from the other, lest by looking into them, you shake one another by cleaving together, and so disquiet the Bees next to, which feare all manner of shaking, lest the same throwe downe their weake wozkes of ware. And the mouthes of the hives ought to stand somewhat deeper then the back part lest raine beating in, might not lightly run out againe by their entry or hole: for remedy of the which, some make a rowe or

uer their hole, the better to keepe off the foule weather. And no manner of heat so much hurteth them as doeth bitter cold, and for this the faces of hives ought to be in the winter toward the rising of the sun, that the bees may so receiue the warme comfort in the morning comming forth, & be the luckier: for cold doth cause them to be sluggish; and for that cause their holes ought to be very narrow, that as little cold as is possible may enter into them, and so narrow made that the Bees within may receiue the entry but of one Beë at once: for by that meanes can neither the Beetle, Butterflie, nor great moth enter to annoy them. Besides, for their often recourse home, Varro willeth to make two or thre commings into the hive, somewhat distant asunder.

What things bees do chiefly abhor, or greatly hate. Cap. II.

TH bees, is that (named the Eccho) vngratefull or much displeasing, which as Pliny writeth, doth greatly feare them, through the strange sound rebounding againe, and the mist also doth much molest and trouble them: besides, the spinner through her web hanging downe before the hive, and the sluggish Butterflie (which Pliny nameth dishonorable) are 2. waies pestiferous, as the one when he spoileth the ware, and dengeth within the hive: and the other breeding magots or little wormes within the combs. They greatly hate oyle, like as al the kinds of other bees do, and a stinking sauour, which evidently appeareth by that kind of herbe named mugwort, which they especially hate, because the same is of a strange stincke to them. The hornets also of the like sort creast, but baser of kinde, they greatly feare, for that to the hornets the hony Bees are a speciall food: also they be meat to swallowes, to sparrows, and to all other small birds.

The frogs also they do greatly feare, which only lie in wait for them, both in Parishes, running springs, shallow waters, and little ditches: and likewise the todes doe lie in wait for the bees, which destroy many of them. And the sheepe doe greatly trouble the Hony Bees, if so be they happen to fall or light into the wooll of their backs, out of which they cannot easily wind or get themselves againe.

And

And if any happen to boile oꝝ seeth Riuier Creuilles (oꝝ Sea Crabs) neare to the hives, and that the bees feele the sa-
uor thereof, they die soꝝthwith.

By what signes men may know when the hony bees are diseased, and how men may cure them. Chap. 12.

This is a speciall argument and note that bees are diseased, if that they flie scattering in the swarme, if they keep not their proper colour, but be (as it were) of a strange and contrary colour, if they also are ouer leane, if they appeare dusky and hairy, and that out of their cottages be dead bees caried thence. When all these notes and signes are espied in the bees, it is then high time to seeke remedy foꝝ them, lest helpe (by longer running) be sought too late. Wherefoꝝe Paladius willethe to minister the kernels of Pomegranets bzutised and mixed with sweete and pleasant wine, and the same powꝝed into channels oꝝ gutters of halfe canes, set neere to the mouthes of hives: oꝝ hony with Rose leaues well beaten together, and so ministered to them: oꝝ the berries of the Saruicetree bzutised, and mixed with hony: and soꝝ lacke of these helpes, a man may make a smoke of drie Ore oꝝ Cow dung, which smoke much delighteth and comforteth them, so that the same be often vsed vnto Harvest. But if through the Waggs oꝝ little woꝝmes of butterflies the bees be diseased, Rutius then iudgeth it best, to set a brazen Candlesticke, oꝝ such like vessel, with light burning in it at Euening within the hie, that to the same light (the butterflies gathering, and flying about) may so fall downe into it, and be destroyed.

Aristomachus writeth, that the diseased bees may be recovered in this maner: if that all the corrupt combe within the hie be taken soꝝ h, and fresh sodd anew put in soꝝ the whole, and the hie after smoked within. Also he affirmeth, that Rosemary soddē with water and hony together, and being cold powꝝed into halfe canes oꝝ elder sticks made hollow like gutters, and the same set by the mouthes of the hives, soꝝ the bees to drinke on, doeth recover the bees againe. Hyginus affirmeth, that either ore oꝝ mans vꝝine let in like manner (as
about

aboue said) by the mouthes of the hieues, doeth also recover the diseased bees. Now al these must the keeper of the bees do, which is both sober and chaste, and feedeth not vpon solwe meats, nor filthy or strong of saour, nor any salt meats.

What maner of person the keeper of Bees ought to be. C. 13.

The bees, for that they much abhorre all filthy stinks and smells, Palladius willeth the keeper of them to eschew diligently all strong and ill smelling saours, one also that delighteth to be chaste of body, and free from filthines, amongst these not breathing solwly, or of a stinking breath, not sweating, nor sauoring of sweat, not one besides of wicked conditions, or such a person as standing among the sight of the bees, doth not earnestly moue and procure them to flie to him, or as one stinged endeauoureth to defend himselfe from them: but rather as a flatterer among his acquaintance and childezen, hath learned to intreat and please the bees by a more gentle manner. He also which mindeth to haue in a readines, the hieues to his vse, in which he may receiue forthwith the rude youth of the swarmes, for forthwith if they be not diligently preserved they flie quite away at the full heat of the sun. But how these hieues ought aptly to be prepared, shall hereafter be taught in the sixteenth Chapter. If the Doze bees be ouer many in the hieue, and that you would gladly rid them forth, then do on this maner: first take and plucke off the wings of one of those Doze bees, and put into the hieue, and incontinent the hony bees espying the same, will fall vpon the other Doz Bees, and doth kill and dyne them quit away.

By what subtile meanes, the swarmes being come forth, may be preserved from flying quite away. Chap. 14.

Palladius in his second booke writeth, that the swarmes of the hony bees flie away especially in the moneth of Iune: but with vs the same oftner hapneth in the moneth of May, as hath beene noted by sundry diuers times, especially if the yong bees be sound and hearty within the hieues. Therefore the keeper must diligently looke to the hieues, and at no time be absent, especially when the yong bees increase and abound in the hieues, for if they be not then carefully looked vnto, and

staied by the diligence of the keeper, they all flie quite away. For such is the nature and propertie of the bees, that assoone as the swarme of the yong bees are bzed with the kings, and that they be strong & able to flie away, then as disdainning the swarms of the old bees, they seeke the moze gouernment. For they be such liuing things as delight to rule alone, not seeking aide or counsel of the elder bees: & therefore do the new kings flie forth with the yong swarms following them, which for a day or two befoze their flying, remaine heaping together befoze the mouths of the hives, & right vnder the hives, so that by their coming forth, & heaping in such order, they properly shew the desire of a new place, and be as yet contented to remain therabout, if the keeper prouide for them a fit place. But if they be not diligently regarded, then (as it were by an injury receiued) they seeke a new place. To preuent this, let the keeper looke circumspectly to the hives in the spring time, about the eight houre of the day (when the swarms are not yet flown away) that he may the diligentlier marke and see the flying out and comming in of the yong bees.

Now the readines of bees in flying away, is knowne two waies: first, when for certain daies befoze, in a maner at the setting of the Sun, they abundantly gather on a heape right befoze the mouth of the hive, like great clusters of graps, and hang together one vpon another: the other note is, that when they be minded within thzee daies after to flie away, they make as marueilous a noise and stirring to & fro within the hives at euening, as souldiers at an alarme within a Castle, which you may easily know (this readines of them) if that you lay your eare to each hive. And when some of the Bees are flown away, then doe those waile for the others, untill the whole swarme be come together. To keep Bees from flying away, Pliny teacheth in the 11. booke of his Natural History, that the hives ought to be nointed about with the iuice of the herbe Balme. Also other affirme, that the swarme doth settle and stay againe, thzough the onely thzowing of fine dust on them, if so be the same be thzowen on light, and that ouer the Bees. Some others affirme, that the Bees will not
flie

flie away, if the dung of a first calfe of any colv be smeared about the mouthes of hives. Pliny writeth, that by the onely binding y fresh white vine (running in hedges) round about the bodie of hives, it staie the swarme from flying away. Of the Bees new settled in a swarme together, and taken or recovered againe. Chap. 15.

When the bees are now in a tumult in the aire, by thys wing fine earth on high ouer the bees, or ringing a bason or kettle, they be with the still sound astonied, that they may the sooner settle down neare the keeper, which if the same happē to be on the branch of a tree, or on a graft or yong set, then with a sharp saw, gently saw that off & lay it on the ground, and speedily set a hive on the same prepared for that purpose: for by that meanes (without doubt) will the whole swarm flie vp to the top and head of the hive. Yet it often happeneth, that they do not wholly cleave on a heap to the branch of a tree, but to the stocke or body of the tree, which to be cut, must be by great force, and so not able to be recovered by this means. In such a case the swarme must be quickly swept off, either with the hand, or with a Gose wing, that they may so fall together into the hive. If the swarme happen to be clustered together on the top of a tree, so high that they cannot be climed vnto, to take them downe then, after the shaking of them into the hive (turned vp) either with a pole, or high forke, the hive must speedily be turned downe to the earth. And if they be but thus taken or recovered, yet if the king shall be still in the hive, then doth the swarme flie in againe: where if he remaine not, then will none of the swarme abide in the hive, but flie forthwith into the former place. Wherefore that they may be moued to abide, you must then sprinkle the hive with water and hony together, and couer the same within with greene Nettles, or rather greens Fennell, or some such sweete herbe, annointed a little with hony, and after set at the Evening in their proper place. For the hive in the day time, after the recovering thus of the Bees, may not be stirred vntill the Evening, that the Bees so quietly resting all that night, may in the Morning easily goe forth, but

but for thzee daies together (in a maner) must the kēper daily looke whether the swarme keepeth below in the hīue, for if it doth, then are the bees purposed to flie away. And if none of all these remedies may yet moue the bees to stay and tarie in the hīue, then besmoke the hīue with flare, and they will after enter in and abide in the Hīue: which so staying in the Hīues, set at the Euening in his proper place. Here learne a further instruction, that if the swarme of Bēes cannot be gathered and recouered together all at one time, then may you gather the swarme at two or moze times together, and alwaies put each part gathered vnder the hīue. If it hapneth that you haue gotten the king with a part of the swarme, then will all the others soone come to the hīue (without further trauell) of their owne accord. If the Bēes be also entred into the hollowe of a tree, then to the hole which they vse to go in and out at (as their proper dooze) set a prepared hīue, and beneath their hole, neare to the roote and bottome of the hollow (as you can gesse) boze another big hole, that ye may well put in a smoke of bymstone to them, which may so cause all the bees to flie out at their hole into the hīue, set ouer the mouth of it: for no better deuice or inuention can bee made in this matter, then by such a smoke made. If the same hollow tree be so thin, that it may easily be sawed asunder, then with a sharpe saw let the hollow part be cut asunder, both above and beneath, and after couering it with a cleane sheete, cary the swarme home, which at euening couer with a new hīue, sprinkled with water and honie mixt together. For so they will tarry the willinglier, being all shaken forth of the bodie of the tree, and couered with the hīue. Besides, the hearbe Bugwozt (which the bees by a naturall hatred do abhorre) doeth chase them with the onely smell from place to place.

Which are the best and fittest Hīues for the Honie Bees. Chap. 16.

PAlladius writeth, that the best hīues be those, which bee made of the barkes and light cozkes of trees, because they be neither too cold in the winter time, nor too hot in the Summer.

mer. And of this, those hives which be wrought and made of the small Oser or willow tree, or of the vine sticks knit together, or canes cleft in the midst (which be of like condition to the barke) wrought close together, and stopped close about with flocks and clay tempered together with water and salt, may aptly serue if you will. But if neither of those fashioned hives like you, then may you make the hives of the wood of a hollow tree, or of light boards made square, and slooping somewhat asoze. The worst hives be those which be made of turfes or earth, because they be ouer hot in the Summer, and ouer cold in the winter. There be other two kinds of hives, as the one made of drie hard colw dung, and the other of tiles. Of which the one doth Celsus rightly condemne, because the same is so lightly burned: and the other he alloweth, although he dissembleth the speciall commodity of it, because the same, if need requireth, cannot easily be remoued and caried into another place.

And among these, I suppose our forme of Hives heere in England, are not altogether to be disallowed, although they be in like danger to bee easily burned, as the other hives aboue taught, in that they be made with straw. But to be briefe, for a great swarme you ought to haue in a readines a great hive, and for a small swarme a little hive. And the hive also ought to be a foote and a halfe, or two foot high, and in breadth aboue two foot and a halfe, or somewhat larger: Having besides two very small and narrow holes, somewhat asunder, and so little ought the mouths to be, that neither beetle, butterflie, great moth, humblebees, Cuck, nor mouse may enter in to spoile the hony combs. Some suppose, or rather affirme of experience, that the Bees are delighted with this closenes, in that they more ioy to do their works and business in the darke then otherwise.

Of the cleanness and sweetnesse of the keeper of Bees, and how Bees ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. Chap. 17.

The keeper of bees, which mindeth to handle and look into hives, ought the day before to refraine the venereal Act, not

not a person fearefull, nor comming to the hieue with vntea-
shed hands and face: and one that ought to refraine in a ma-
ner from all smelling meate, powdered meates, fried meates,
and all other meates that doe stincke, like as the Leakes, the
Onions, the Garlike, and such like, which the Bees greatlie
abhorre: besides, to be then swet of body, cleanlie in apparell,
minding to come vnto their hieues, for in all cleantinesse and
sweetnes the bees are much delighted. Now thus prepared,
and in a readinesse, vpon the hieues first of the Bees, about
the 8. or 10. day of Aprill, being then a cleare and warme day,
and purge the hieues of all such filth which is gathered in them
all the winter befoze, like as Spiders webs, which ought es-
pecially to be wiped away, because they corrupt the combs:
not with hands, but with a Goose wing, the same ought to be
done. After that, the hieue ought to be smoked with Oxe or
Cow dung, for in that (as it were by an affinity of the kind)
doe the bees greatly delight. The little wormes also, which
some name Waggonets, that breed in the combs through the
blowing of the butterflies, and also the butterflies ought to
be killed and purged out of the hieue. If the combs happen to
fall through infection or corruption in them, then make a
smoke with the Oxe dung and marrow of an oxe or cow, mixt
together, that the sauour may go vp to them, which for that
time will cure the weake combs, strengthen the Bees, and
cause them to worke the lustier afterwaies. And from the be-
ginning of May, vnto the last of June, the hieues ought dili-
gently to be looked vnto: that the yong swarms die not away.
Also from the tenth of June, vnto the tenth of August, the
hieues ought to be opened now and then, and to bee smoked
with such like as afoze is taught. Which although it be grie-
uous for the time to bees, yet the same is very profitable, and
strengthening them. And from the beginning of the Dogge
dates, vnto the eighteenth of September, ought the bees to
be carefully looked vnto, and defended from the violence of
the hornet bees, which often wait befoze the mouthes of the
hieues, to set vpon and eate the hony bees. Now the keeper
in a faire Sunny day, ought to cleanse the hieues of all man-
ner

ner annoyances, as befoze is taught, and diligently to stoppe the chinkes and clefts about, sauing the moutthes of the Hives, with Dretung and clay mixed together. And this ought to be done for two or thre daies befoze the change of the Mone, the better to defend the butterfie and others from creeping in. The hives besides ought to haue two big stiches cleane scraped, and running a crosse from side to side, and sprinkled round about within with sweete and pleasant wine, or else the stiches to be hard rubbed ouer with the green branches of Fenell, or other sweete smelling hearbs, or with a little hony and leaues of the Pear-tree together, or with the branches of the herb Tymie blowzing, or Sauery, or marjorame, or the hearbe Balme and hony together. Some anoint the stiches and hieue within with sweete Creame of new Cow milk, or with water and hony sodden together, and that sprinkled about within the hieue, that the Bees may be the rather and sooner moued to farrie and dwell still in their Hives.

How Bees lacking hony, may be fed in that present need. Chap. 18.

BEcause the boisterousnes of the aire doth sometime constrain the bees to abide in their hives, and that they may not onely feede of hony, but at the rising of the constellation, (named Vergiliæ) they may be fedde and cherished, and the same done in this manner without great cost. As first, if you take the number of ten figs, scething them in fire pintes of faire Conduit or spring water, vnto a pint wasted, which after set on one side of the hieue within, laying many small stiches a crosse ouer the liquoz, that those may serue in stead of bzidges, the apter for them to drinke of the liquoz without drowning in the same. Others will to sceth hony and water together, and the same to be powzed into dishes set at the one side of the hieue, in the which they will to put fine carded wool, that the bees may the better drinke now and then, and be not cloyed with too much drinking of the licor, by ligh-
ting into it. Others take figs and raisons, beating them together, & after boiling them in the sweet liquoz named Cuyte,
they

they potoze into dishes, couering the same with oaten straws a crosse. Others also will to take a little honey, putting into the same a few oate coznes, that the bees lighting on them, may so keepe their wings from wetting in the loquoz. Now all these meanes may well suffice to cherish and feed the bees in the winter time, lacking then food, being set neare vnto the mouthes of the hives. So that if a longer hunger oppzesseth them, then with the hives fast by the entring in, set little gutters made of halfe canes, or great elder stiches cleft, into the which potoze of the sweete liquozs aboue taught, so by that meanes may they be well recovered and strengthened in the deepe of winter, when their food faileth them. Some will to put fresh birds cleane drawn, or the flesh of a hen finely shzed into hives, so the bees to feed and sucke vpon in the deepe of winter: and fine feathers also they will to put into the hive, that they may giue then a warmth vnto the Bees lying in them: And others also will to put the meat of roasted chickens into their hives to feede and sucke vpon, and not the bones withal, lest the sauour of the bones after the meate eaten off, might annoy the bees by lying still in the hives, in that they so greatly abhoze all sowe and stinking sauors. Also these kinds of flesh ordered (as abouesaid) may well serue bees in a drie Summer, when as the most flowzes are then faded or quite gone away. Here note, that in the spring and Summer time, the Bee hives ought to be looked vnto thrice in the moneth, gently smoking the Bees to cleanse the hive of all maner of filth, and to sweepe sozth the woymes. And Menecrates willeth the keeper of bees to kil the king black of colo2, which by his malice disquieteth the other king, and cozrupteth the hive, in that he flieth out alone, or with a company of the bees following: so by that means (as Virgil writeth) shall the battell of bees be staied.

Palladius writeth, that the swarmes be increased in the moneth of May, and that in the outmost sides of the combs be the drone bees bred, which ought to be killed, in that those doe much disquiet the rest of the swarme. The butterflies also doe abound, which hee willeth diligently to kill, so their

their great annoyance vnto the hony Bées.

About the beginning of Nouember ought the hives then to bee cleared of their filth, so that all the winter following they may neither bee remoued or opened: And this may not bee done but in a warme Sunnie day. The combs may not be touched with hands, but with the feathers of a stiffe Goose wing, or such bigge fowle. After that to stoppe the chinkes round about with Dredung and clay finely laboured together, and to lay straw thicke ouer the tops of the hives, the better to defend the Bées from the colde and tempests.

How the dead Bees may be restored to life againe. Chap. 19.

The keeper of Bées ought to fore-see and take heed, that the Bées perish not through ouer great heate, or ouer mighty colde. If at any time by a suddaine showre in the seking for food, bees happen to be beaten down, or nipped with a suddaine cold (which seldome so commeth to passe, that the hony bees are so deceiued) that harmed with the drops, they lie groueling and flat vpon the earth, as dead in a manner, then gather such bees together, putting them into some vessel for the nonce, which after set in a warme Chamber or Parlour, and couer warme embers (being somewhat more then hot) on the Bées, which gently shake with the Asches, but in such sort that you touch them not with your hand: and setting the Bees in the Sunne, and neare vnto their Hives, they will after recouer and flie againe into their cottages.

Of the battell that Bees haue sometime amongst themselves. Chap. 20.

Virgil writeth, that Bées sometimes minding to fight, do hastily burst out of the hives, and (as were in ciuill batels amongst themselves) do fight like strangers one against the other, & smite eagerly in their fight one at another, if so be one hive hath especially 2. kings bred vp in the same, which very well may be known, when as the bees clustered and heaped together, do expresse or represse (as it were) the forme of

two beards hanging downe. Now their readines to fight is knowne, when in the aire is heard a great sound and noise among the bees, like to the manner of trumpets whiles they fiercely and cruelly fight together among themselves, and in this battell they glitter with their wings, sharpen the stings with their beakes, beare forth their breasts, and about the king they gather and swarme: so that they shout with great noise, flying and dashing together, and that in heaps & round companies mixed or ioyned together, and great is the noise made among them. And to be shott, in this strong and eager battell, many of them fall headlong downe, and that thicker then hailstones to the ground.

The kings themselves in the meane time flying in the middle fronts, doe fight with a fierce courage within themselves, and they are also seene to flie hither and thither among thick heaps and swarmes of the bees (like as valiant Captains are wont to do in the time of a battell) with their glistering wings and beakes, beating downe of the swarmes, here and there, and on each side of them of both parts: so that of themselves not giuing over this eager battell, vntill the one part forced to turne the backe to the other, doe flie away with expedition.

Wherefore that this doubtfull battell in the meane time may be ceased and quieted betwixen them, the wise practisers wil that the keeper of bees doe stay and appease this boile of them, by the casting of fine earth ouer the bees, while they be thus fighting, which (as the wise affirme) of experience doth forth-with pacifie the great stomackes and courages of both parts. But if this auaileth not, then with hony and water sodden together, or raisons in like order, or with any sweete liquor sprinkled on them, is their fury appeased, which doeth (as it were) with the pleasant sweetnes, quiet the irascuness of the warriors, and with the same in this controuersie they are marueilously appeased. If neither of these remedies doe yet pzeuaile, then let the keeper marke diligentlie those bees which fight in the front, and be most eager Capitaines, that he may kill them with expedition, for by that meanes, and with

with the other remedies aboue taught, may the battels and fight of the warriours be thoroughly ceased.

Now after the bees are thus quieted, and the swarme settled round on some green bow next hand, then marke diligently whether the whole swarme hangeth downe like a cluster of grapes, which so seeing, declareth there to bee either one king or two, by good agreement reconciled, which let alone on such wise, untill they flie backe vnto their proper home. But if the swarme shall be diuided into two or many round clusters, then iudge that there be yet many Captains left, & that their ire is not ceased, and in those parts where you especially see the bees to cluster most thicke and round together, there diligently seeke out the captains, yet annoint your hand before with the iuice of the hearbe Balme, that touching or handling the bees, they flie not hither & thither, after which put in your fingers gently, and seuering the Bees asunder, seeke diligently among them, untill you find out the author and procurer of the battell, which you ought likewise to kill. Virgil writeth, that the kings sometimes flie forth for a vaine delight, to sport them flying in the aire, which you may easily stay and let, if that you plucke off the kings wings, that he cannot afterward flie.

How Bees may be recovered and found againe. Chap. 21.

If so it hapneth, that your bees are flowne away, and that you be in doubt whether they be lodged neare hand, or far off, Palladius doth instruct and teach many goodly waies to find them againe. First he teacheth to take red lead, or red oker infused in water, or any other colour staining, and to carie the same with you in a little shallow dish, to such a spring or running water as the honie bees haue, especially in the moneth of Aprill, and there sitting downe, await the coming of the bees to drinke, which after they be come, & there drinking, staine in the meane time such bees with a russh coloured red at the end, as you may well reach with the same, sitting yet still, and watching the coming againe of those bees marked to drinke, which if they shortly returne, then is it an euident note and token, that their lodging and

cottages be neare hand; but if those Bees are long befoze they retorne and come againe to the place, then may you suppose and iudge them to be far off, and the distance you may gesse according to their long tarrying and soone comming againe. That you may easily finde the place where the Bees lodge, whether the same be farre or neare hand, Palladius teacheth the same wittly in this manner:

First he willethe to take one whole ioynt of a big cane or Elder sticke, stopped at the one end, and the other end left open to annoint within with a little hony, which lay neare to that spring or running water, that the Bees daily hant vnto. Now when the Bees resort to the same, and that certaine be entred within the quill, thzough the sauoz thereof, then stop the hole with your thumbe, letting one of the Bees afterward to flie forth, which diligently marke, and follow that way it flieth, for it will shew you part of the way vnto their home: and after you can see the same no further, then quickly set forth another Bee, whose flight in like manner marke and follow after, for that it may also shew part of the way to their home: and so let flie the Bees by one and one vntill they bring you vnto the place of the swarme. Now if the same place be deepe in the earth, then with a smoke made either of drie flaxe or Brimstone, drive the Bees out, and when the swarme is come forth, then ring on a Mason or Whill pan, for being by and by scared with the Whill sound of the same, the swarme either lighteth on a yong tree, or on the opener bough of a big tree, which so sound out, couer ouer with a hieue prepared for the nonce. But if the swarme be placed in the hollow of a tree, and hauing boughes, or in the stock of the same tree, then with a very sharpe saw (if the meanes of the same will giue leaue) cut it asunder: and in such sort, that the part empty aboue the Bees be first cut, and the part beneath, in which it seemeth the Bees to be lodged, to be likewise cut asunder, and the stocke thus cut asunder at both the ends, couer with a faire sheete, lest any lagge cliffs appeare after the cutting, which also annoint with hony, for the better staying in of the Bees, and after carry the same home which

which place by your other hives, making small holes in the same, for their flying in and out (as afoze was taught) in the ordering of the other hives. But it behoueth the diligent searcher, to chuse the morning times for the finding out of Bees, whereby you may haue the space and liberty of the day befoze you to find out their resort: for by looking late after them, it falleth out, although the Bees are neare hand, yet because they haue then done their busie and carefull labour, they flie no longer abroad to seeke food, nor yet resort to drink: though which it so cometh to passe, that the searcher after Bees knoweth not then how neare, or farre off the swarme is from the spring or running water. Some take the iuice of the hearbe Balme in the spring time, and annoint the same round about the hie, whereby the sauer of the iuice may cleaue and abide on the vessel, which afterward being faire within, sprinkle about with a little hony, setting the same hie downe neare to the wood or groue of trees fast by that spring of water running by it, and after the same be filled with a swarme, carry it gently home. Yet doth not this like, but in such places where the swarmes of Bees doe abound, for that oftentimes it so happeneth, that vlesse the hives be daily watched, such as go by doe take them away. But to lose some hives greatly hindereth not, so that you may in the meane whiles enioy one or two of the fall.

Now hitherto hath bin sufficiently taught such remedies and helpes, as necessarily serue to the taking and recovering of Bees lost, and otherwise to finde out most strange swarmes.

That Bees sting no person comming neare their Hives. Chap. 21.

Plinie in his 20. booke writeth, that the hearbe Sperage bruised and mired with oyle, and one beeing annointed with the same, doth defend him from being stinged by coming nigh to their Hives. And in his 18. booke he also writeth, that if any man happen to be stinged by a scorpion, that he shall neuer after be stinged of any bee: but yet being sting-

ed, he teacheth to drinke the iuice of hearbe grace and Kew,
mired with wine, and to lay the leaues also in plaster forme
on the stinged place. In the xxi. booke he writeth, that Bees
stings are by nature venemous, against the which he teach-
eth to take and vse the iuice of Mallows, or the iuice of Tny
leaues, and to annoint either of the two on the stinged pla-
ces, as a soueraigne remedy. And in the 23. booke he teach-
eth, that wine boiled with Bay leaues, ann after drunke, is
a very good remedy. In the 24. booke he teacheth, to take
a drop of that molten, which the hony Bees make at the en-
try of the hieue, to be a like remedy as the water Bezoar to
bee vled against venemous bites. Auicen in his second rule
teacheth, that the decoction of the March Mallows, with vi-
neger or wine, and the same annointed on stinged places, to
be a perfect remedy: which also in his fourth rule affirmeth,
that the hony Bees haue like dispositions vnto the waspe, sa-
ying that they leaue their stings behind them: wherefoze for
remedy of the wasps, you may vse those which we haue afoze
taught against the stings of Bees.

When and how the Hieues ought to be gelded.

Chap. 23.

Palladius Rutilius in his first booke teacheth, that the hieues
of Bees ought not to be gelded, befoze you well consider
and see whether they be ripe, vnto the comming of the true
hony, which in a manner (as he teacheth) commeth to vse in
the moneth of Iune, or as others affirme, in the ende of Au-
gust, vnto the middle of September.

Now there be certaine notes and tokens by which we try
and find out the ripenes of them, which be these: first, if the
hieues be full, then do the hony Bees drine forth the idle drone
Bees out of the hieues, and there is also heard within a small
or myll humming of the Bees, for that the empty cottages
of the combes (as it were hollow buildings) doe receiue a
sound and noyse pccured then bigger, so that when there is
hard a big and hoarse sound of the humming of them, then is
it not yet meet to geld the combes. Varro writeth, that it
is then time to geld hieues, when as you see within, that the
Bees

Bees hang clustring round, and that the holes of the hony combs be covered ouer (as it were) with thin caules, for then be they full of hony. Now the day of gelding the hives, ought to be done timely in the morning, when as the bees are astoned through the colde aire, and not done in the heate of the day, when they be procured to flie forth of the hives, and being then very angry to sting those persons which come to the Hives. The manner of gelding of the Hives is after this wise: First, stoppe the holes of the hives, that the Bees passe not forth, with grasse or some other hearbe, after that put under fine linnen rags or straw, making a little smoke with the same, which smoke so flying vp, causeth the bees after to breake, and leaue their clustring together.

After these, with two instruments: or tooles of iron (made for the only purpose) of a foot and a half long, or rather somewhat longer, of which the one ought to be a long knife, and broad of either side the edge, and hauing a crooked file on the one end, the other at the beginning plaine, and very sharpe, whereby with this the combs may the readier and quicklier be cut downe, and with the other scraped cleane: and whatsoever filth falleth off, draw away, and throwe aside. But where the hie of the hinder part, or part behinde, shall haue no voyde place empty, then make a smoke (as Varro commandeth) with Galbanum, and drie Dre dung, which ought to be made in an earthen fuming pan, filled with quick coles, or a pan of earth with a narrow mouth, and a handle like to it, so that the one part ought to be sharper and narrower upward, by which the smoke may passe by the little holes, and the other part where the coles are broader, and with a large mouth of the one side of it, by which the person may blowe the coles. Now such a potte when it is set within the hie, and the smoke stirred vp unto the Bees, they by and by vnquieted with the saueur, flie vnto the fore-part of the hie, and sometimes flie quite out of the hie, whereby any may looke into the hie (in a manner) without harme. If there happen to be two swarmes in one Hie, then are there also two kindes or formes of hony combs: For euery company

company of Bees in a grément together, both fashion and frame the ware as liketh them best. But all the hony combs being hollo w wrought, and a little cleauing vnto the sides of the Hie, doe hang, whereby they may not touch a flooze or board, soz so it causeth the swarmes to flie quite away: and the forme of their ware is such, as the condition of their cottages is. For some bees do make both square and round spaces, and some long, so that each frameth (as it were) certaine formes in the combes according to his kind, whereby the hony combes are not found alwaies alike in fashion: but these combes of what forme soeuer they be, are not to be taken all out of the Hives. For in the beginning of Haruest, whiles the fields yet flourish, take a fift part of the combes, but after, when Winter is at hand, then leaue a third part behind.

Palladius willetth the hives to be gelded in the moneth of October, and that a third part be left behind. Yet consider that if there be store, to make the moze, if but a meane, then the halfe part of that leaue for the winter time: if the cottages appeare but halfe full, then take nothing away. Varro teacheth, that a third part of the combes may be taken away and the other part left for the winter, although the combs be full of hony: if you feare (saith he) a sharpe winter to follow, then take nothing at all. Of the same minde is the learned Virgil: but the expert practisers of our time in such matters do affirme, that the hony ought to be taken away but once in the yeare, and this in the end of the moneth of August, vnto the middle of September. But the ware being corrupt, then both before, and at any time may be taken forth of the Hives.

Also as touching the honie which the Bees giue, whether you may take away either little or much, must be considered according to the smalnesse or plentifulnesse of that hony being in the hie. And according to the smalnesse or greatnes also of the swarme to be nourished, so that aboue the fourth part of the combes may not be taken from any hie, yet this order may not be vsed alike in all countries, because

a man must consider the dealing with the hives, according to the multitude of flowers, & plentifulnes of food for the bees. If the warie combes hanging downe, doe run into a length, then with the same iron toole, which is made like to a knife, being oftentimes dipped in water, that the ware cleave not vnto it, or that the combes remaining may be harmed, and the hie holden on the one side, cut the combes away. After this, put both your armes into the hie, gathering together, and taking forth the combes. But if the combes hang ouerthwart in the hie, then must you vse your scraping yron, that the combes on the further side thrust together, may so be cut away. Also the olde and corrupt combes are to be taken forth, the whole and full of hony to be especially left. And if there be any yong bees in them, those keepe or preserve to increase the swarme in that hie: after that carry all the store of the hony combes into one place, where as you minde to make your honie, and stoppe diligently the sides and edges of the hives round about, that noye of the Bees may enter in, which for the hony, and ware taken away, doe eagerly sake after, and finding the same, doe utterly consume the same if they may. Wherefore of the former matters must a smoke be made, and that at the entrie or mouth of the hives, that the Bees assaying to flie in, may through the smoke bee driven to flie backe againe. Now after their hives be gelded, and that any shall haue ouerthwart and crossed combes at the entrance of the hie, those then shall be so conuerted, that the parts behind may be emptied and left void for another time. So that when they shall be next gelded, the old combes rather then the new to be taken forth, and the ware renewed, for that the older the warie combes are, so much the worse they be.

If it happeneth, that the hie bee so made that the same may not be remoued out of the place, then ought you to geld first the hinder part, and after the forepart: and this especially ought to be done afore nine a clocke in the morning, and after nine of the clocke at night, or in the next morrow. Now the bees when they know this, all come to fill the empty place,

so that after they haue repaired and filled the same, and fulfilled all the rest about it, then flie they to the sozpart, and do worke in like order. By which we may evidently learne, that they haue filled the same emptie place also, by their abiding still there. Besides these, as the great plentie of honie doth cause sluggishnes in the Bees, euen so doth the much abatement, and excëding taking away of their hony, both dull the quicknes and diligence of them, and cause them also to be sluggish.

What the Hony is, and how from the hives the same may be prepared to vse. Chap. 24.

As wee first gather the Honie from the combes, so doe we the ware for the comfort of light, and other commodities besides. Now what the Hony is, and how the same taken from hives may bee prepared to vse, shall hereafter be taught.

First, the learned Isidore writeth, the Honie to be of the dew of some liquid matter, and affirmeth also the same to be found sometimes in the leaues of great Canes. To which in a manner doeth Publius Maro agree; in this verse writing, that hitherto the heavenly gifts are of the Aereall Hony. Others teach, the Honie in India and Arabia to bee like to salt, gathered there on the leaues of trees: others do doubt, whether hony be a sweat from heauen, or a certaine spittle of the starres, or the iuice of the aire purging it selfe. But whatsoeuer substance the same is, yet is it a most sweete, subtile, and healthfull iuice, as Pliny witnesseth, which at the first gathering of it is as cleare water, but after the boiling a while and purging of it selfe, as new wine (after the pressing forth) and doth from the twentieth day after, come to a perfectnesse of hony, through the often tempering of it in hot daies, from the beginning of May, vnto the middle of June.

Now the hony is gathered in this maner: first befoze the hony be pressed out of the combs, must those corrupt combs, hauing red filth, & hauing yong in them (if any such be there) bee pressed out, because they both procure an euill taste, and with

with that iuice corrupt the hony. These combs bzuised together, ought to be put into a cleane presse, being yet warme, and new gathered out of the hives the same day, which let lie there, untill the hony by little and little be run forth, or rather for the more expedition pressed forth with a heavy waight, and the same which is then come, is very faire raw hony. After that, the hony with the ware must be boiled together, as hereafter shall be taught.

Now when the combs be thus bzuised together, and the yong bees killed and cast forth, then must you make your hony in this maner: As first, in the month of September or October, take the heauier and olde hives, which are of two or thre peares olde, and not hauing byed swarmes in the summer befoze: and that ouer smoke with a flame of straw, orie flaxe or yellow bymstone, the hieue being a little whiles holden that the Bees may so flie vp to the top of the hieue, or else such as remaine below burne their wings. After that turne downe the head of the hieue on the ground, and with a sharpe knife cut the crossed stikes asunder in the Hieue, or plucke them forth with your hand, for by that meanes are the combs well bzuised together, and the Bees either killed with the fall of them, or else flie away. After this, put all the combs on a heape, being gathered out of the hives here and there, into a presse, leaning somewhat on the one side: but some put the combs into a wine basket made of smal willow or osier stikes finely knit and wrought together, that being hanged vp in a darke place, the hony may runne thowow by little and little from it. After that the hony hath thus run forth into a cleane earthen pan or boule standing vnder it, then the same after poure into an earthen pot, or pots being as yet raw Honie, but clearer and better then the other liquoz of the Honie: which for certaine daies let stand open, that the sweete liquoz may bee thowowly cooled, and the same in the meane whiles often skimme or purge with a spoone. Now after this, the fine pieces or crummes of the combs, which et remaine in the bagge of wicker, or wine basket, or presse, put into an earthen pot, pan, or kettle, ouer a very soft fire, that the

same may heat without boyling, alwaies keepe your hand in the vessell, to stirre still about hither and thither the hony and ware, and to open also the ware by peece-meale vntil the hony, and not the ware, shal be thorowly molten. When the hony through the heat beginneth a little to picke the hand, then poure all the whole masse or substance into a strainer, and putting the same in a presse made for the onely purpose, wringing it hard about: yet it maketh no great matter, if the same be not so earnestly wringed or pressed out, that none of the honie remaine yet with the ware, seeing that the hony and ware haue effects in some causes alike. Now this hony, which is thus run forth, is named the sodden hony, which ought in like manner to be poured into earthen pots, and to stand open for certain daies, skimming it daily with a spone, vntill it be thorow cold. The noblier or worthier hony, is that which runneth out in a maner of it owne accord, before the second pressing out of the combs. And mixe not of this second hony with the first, but keepe them diligently apart, lest by mixing the first vnto the second, you make the best (being the first) the worse. After all this thus handled, the same that remaineth in the strainer, wash diligently with conduit or faire spring water, that you may so haue the milke or hony water, of which being sodden, and diligently skimmed (as of this hereafter shall be further taught) is the milke made, that serueth to many good uses.

Which Hony is accounted best. Chap. 25.

Certaine Countries do excell in the perfect goodnes of hony, like as the famous Attica of Greece, which for the excellencie of the hony, is had in great reputation thorowout the world. Hybla also and Hymetus, being hills of the same Country, which the deceiuers apply to hony, that the same may both be named Hymetus and Hybleus hony. Creta, Cyprus, and Affrica, as in goodnesse they are notable and worthy, so the abundant or marueilous plenty of the honie is there commended. Also the newnes of hony is likewise commended as the ancientnesse of wines, but chiefly the spring and Summer hony, especially if the vessell or blue stand in a valley

balley oꝝ bottome, and doth excel in the waight of hand. But the hony gathered of bitter hearbes is counted vnprofitable, as that same hony which the bees gather in the Countrey of Pontus, where the bees onely gather their hony of the woꝝm wood. The white in all countries is better esteemed then the blacke, but the best hony is that which is very cleare, of a golden colour, of a most pleasant and sweet taste, cleauing somewhat to the fingers in the handling, and but little stickning oꝝ waring hard together, and that in the pouring forth, doeth strait-way breake heere and there, and squirteth oꝝ spinkleth (suddenly as it were) sundꝝ drops abroaꝝd, which being on this wise, Pliny teacheth to be the triall and sure note of good and profitable hony.

Of the venemous Hony, and of the wonderfull

Hony of Creta. Chap. 26.

I So much soꝛceth to vnderstand and know, what maner of food the same is, with the which the bees doe liue, as the poysoned hony also that may be gathered by them, whether it be euill oꝝ venemous. Foꝝ the hony of Heraclea in that countrey of Pontus, hath bene foꝝ certaine yeares very dangerous, especially thꝛough a certaine hearbe growing white, which also vexeth their cattell by eating thereof, named of the dwellers there, Agellothron. But by these notes is that hony found out, and tried to be venemous: as first, that the same is not thicke at all, the colour bꝛighter oꝝ moꝝe glistering, and hath a strong saꝛour, mouing forth with often snꝛking, and is also waightrier. Also such persons as taste somewhat thereof, doe couet to lie oꝝ fall hastily on the earth, seeking foꝝ colones, and be all on a sweate, so that in such suddaine dangers, must some speedy helpes oꝝ remedies be ministred: like as the olde Pulse of the best hony, and hearbe Grace, oꝝ other like confections, be often ministred vnto such persons. There is also another kind of venemous hony, in the boꝝder of the Countrey of Pontus, that foꝝ the madnesse which it engendꝛeth, is named of the people Neonomenon: the same hony is supposed to be gathered of the flowꝛe Rhododendros, which groweth plenty there in the woods. Pliny writteth of

a marnellous hony to bee in Creta, so; that in Carina, being a hill of that Countrey, bee affirmeth a Honie to bee gathered which the flies will not touch, and supposed also to bee a singular Honie so; the composition of euery medicine.

Of the miraculous worthinesse of Hony.

Chap. 27.

Most men in Italy prepare and make their medicines which they purpose to keepe long with hony, so that hony preferueth euery thing from putrifying, which you would haue in safety, and to continue so; a season thzough his clamminesse. And of this, ancient men did enbalme the bodies of the dead, which they would haue pserued, and to continue sound without co;rupting many yeres, with hony onely, and the same they also smeared within the tombs o; sepulchres of the dead, so; the longer keeping of the bodies. The selfe same writeth the learned Papinus, of the body of Alexander, which was likewise embalmed with hony. And not vnlike to this writeth Pliny, in the 22. Booke, and 24. chapter of his Histories of sundry dead bodies also embalmed with honie. And in another place of his Histories writeth Claudius Caesar, that bzought a monster out of Egypt into his country, which was also embalmed with hony. Ahanxus also writeth, that bodies subiect to sicknesses, may bot; be kept free from sicknesses, and from co;rupting a long time, thzough the often smearing and anointing of hony of all the body. And the like writers report, that those of the Isle of Corfica, o; Corse doe, which liue a long time.

The Macrobian being a people in Affricke, named also Moerein, do liue a long time (as certaine Autho;rs write) because with the meate of hony, which is plentifull with them, they daily be fed, & vse continually. Some affirme, that Democritus being recreated by hony, with the onely breath and saour of the hony made hot, lined (as they write) vnto 109. yeares. Aristoxenus writeth, that the table of Pythagoras was daily furnished with onely bread and hony, and yet liued vnto the foure score and ten yeares of the Philosopher Heraclides.

clides. The hony also is found to auaise against surfeits, and of this accounted amongst medicines for the putting away drunkenness. Wherefore it is no maruell, that such thozowly skillfull in Physicke, when any be ouer-cloyed or filled with wine, do counsell first to empty their stomacks by vomiting, and after, against the force of the fume euaporating of the remnant of the wine yet remaining, they giue them to eate hony spread on bread, as it were by putting backe the euill, that it may so remedy and put away the grosse fume.

How profitable the vse of Hony is in medicines.

Chap. 28.

First, the white hony is to be vsed in cooling medicines, but the yellow in heating medicines: also the nature and property of hony, is to cleanse and open, and to expell humours, therefore it is profitably applied in filthy bleers, being boiled and anointed vpon. It closeth also loose and gaping flesh, through his wholnesse. And with Liquid, Allome, and Hony, sodden together, are Ringwozmes, and coznes or swelling of the feet healed, by anointing therewith. Against the vncertaine soundings and noise of the eares, and grievous paines of them, take the honie, ground with that salt digged out of the earth, and droppe warme into the eares: the selfe same killeth both nits and lice, by onely anointing the head therewith. Also the hony purgeth the eyes dimme of sight, healeth swellings, and other defaults and griefes of the iawes, the swelling and kernels vnder the iawes neare to the throte, after the preparing to vse the same gargelled in the throte, and the mouth washed therewith. The hony eaten, causeth vyine, helpeth the cough (being cleane skimmed befoze) and the bite of a snake or adder. The hony also helpeth those which haue drunk vnwares the iuice of blacke poppy, so that against the same euil & danger they drink rosed hony warme. Also the same drunke helpeth the malice & danger of Mushromes eaten, & the bite of a mad dog, or melting in y^e mouth, after the forme of an Eclegma. Yet all the sorts of raw hony be windy and swel the body, mouing a rumbling or noise in y^e belly, procuring y^e cough, easily conuerted into euil humors.

Stopping

Stopping the liver and milt, through the clamminesse, and is hurtfull to cholericke bodies, if so be the hony before (as Dioscorides writeth) be not thorowly skimmed and cleansed as the same ought to be. The hony also boyled, doeth better nourish then the raw, yet lesse moving the belly to solublenesse, and to the stoole. And the hony of it selfe, or mixed with others, helpeth the soze in the lungs, and all other diseases of the lungs.

The hony is rightly ministred to such as haue the impostume in the lungs, and the pluresie. And the hony in which dead bees are, is applied to the venemous hony. The hony drunke with wine, helpeth the corruptions which are engendred of the meat fishes: but to cold and moist bodies the hony is more profitable, therefore very fit for olde persons, as Galen affirmeth. And to persons being twentie yeres of age, and of an intemperate hotnesse, or others hot of qualitie, the hony to them is hurtfull, because it is soone converted into choler in them. Democritus was upon a time asked, by what means men might both continue in perfect health, and live unto very olde yeares: To which he thus answered: if so be men anoint their bodies outward with Oyle, and apply their bodies inward with hony. Further, hony profiteth weake persons, being applied: as the Pulse water, of which shal after be taught in the next Chapter. To persons of cold nature, the hony may aptly be ministred in hot broth: but to hot persons, ministred in warme broth, the hony is not rightly given. The hony mixed with Camphora, and lying to settle thre daies before, with the which anointing the face, doeth speedily cleanse the spots in the face, the like doeth the hony mixed with the gale of an Ore. The pure white hony cleanseth the breast, softneth impostumes, being as well without as within the body. The hony also mundifieth, openeth the stoppings of the liver and milt, helpeth drop sic bodies, and strengtheneth weake members. The Aromaticke hony much availeth in sundry diseases, being thus prepared: as the pure red rose leaves, finely clipped, and after boyled in pure white hony, being often and diligently skimmed: for
such

such Honie doeth comfort and mundifie, dissolueth inclem-
sing the clammy swellings, diggesth the flegmaticke and
grosse humours: and dzunke also with colde water, it bin-
deth the belly, but ministred with warme water, it looseth
the belly.

Of the drinke of Hony, which is called Mulse water,
or sweete water of the Romanes. Chap. 29.

By the answer of Pollio the Romane, to Augustus Em-
perour, we may evidently learne, that the Mulse made
of hony, is healthfull dzinke in strengthening the body. For
Augustus on a time demanded of him by what means a man
might liue to great yeares, and all that season fræ from sick-
nesses: To whom he thus answered: that applying the mulse
water within, and annointing oyle without the body, doeth
wozke the like. The Mulse truely is a dzinke made of water
and hony mixed together, which the Grækes properly name
Melicrate, and some Hidromel, as the dzinke made with
wine vnblat, or without water and hony they aptly name
Oenomel. Now the Mulse water dzunke, doth ease the pas-
sage of wind or breath, softneth the belly: and the long time
of oldnesse, change it into the kind of wine, is most agréable
and profitting to the stomacke, but the same is contrary to the
finew: yet it recouereth the appetite lost, and is a defence a-
gainst the dangerous dzinke of Venbane, if it bee ministred
with Ases milke. This dzinke truely (Ægineta writing ther-
of) is thus made: let eight times so much water be mixed vn-
to your hony prepared, which boile or seeth so long, vntill no
more some ariseth to be skimmed off, then taking it from the
fire, preserve it to your vse. But Paul Ægineta affirmeth,
that the Mulse profiteth nothing (in a manner) the chole-
ricke, because the same in them is lightly conuerted into cho-
ler.

Of the drinke Oenomel, which is made of pure wine
and hony. Chap. 30.

The Oenomel, which is a sweete wine made with hony,
Ægineta teacheth to be good, not onely for the preser-
uation of health, but also to expell the torment of sicknesses,

and that which giueth not onely strength of body and courage, but the long race of yeares: also it expelleth an old grieue of the reines, being often drunke with parcely seeds. But the best Oenomell is that which is made of olde and tart wine, and the best purified hony, for the same doth lesse swell. The same also harmeth, being drunke after meales, but before taken, doth procure an appetite. Dioscorides teacheth the manner of making the Oenomell in this order: first he willeth to take one gallon and a quart of wine, and mixing it with halfe a gallon & a pint of the best hony, to prepare the same orderly. But some prepare or make the drinke spädilier to be after this manner: as boyling the hony with wine, and after pouring forth the same into other vessels.

Of the singular water of Hony, gotten by order of distillation. Chap. 31.

The hony of Bees meet to distillation, ought especially to be white of colour, which before the distilling must be mixed with pure, white, and well washed sand, but not drie in any case, after that put the same either into a common Rose Limbecke of Tinne, setting a haire Siue close vpon it, that it may touch the hony in the distilling, or else into a body of Glasse, set into a pot of fine sifted ashes or sand, making at the first a soft fire vnder it, vntill the first water be come, which is white: and after the yellow water appeareth, then put vnder another receiuer, setting aside the white: and so long distil vntill the red beginneth to shew, at the appearance of which, put vnder another receiuer, letting that remaine vntill no more will come. Which red water being the last, serueth for sundry uses, as to die womens haire yellow, by often wetting the haire with a sponge, and drying the same in the hot Sun. Also it causeth faire and long haire, and stayeth the shedding of haire: besides (this third water) doeth cleanse the soul corruption and matter being in filthy wounds and old vlcers, if they be washed twice a day with the same, causing also new flesh to growe in those places, if you daily wash them with the said water, or otherwise dippe linnen clouts in it, laying them aptly on the sores. The selfe same healeth

healeth places grievously burned, without appearance of any scarre after ward, by often applying linnen clouts dipped in it. And the second water (being of golden colour) droppd in the eyes, doth not only helpe swolne and bleared eyes, but the pin and web in them, by the daily and often droppping of the same into the eyes. But as touching the white, and first water, there is no worthy matter mentioned in this place by any of the old practisers.

Another manner of distilling the hony, more at large taught. Chap. 32.

TAke a pint, or as much as you will of the pure rosed hony, which put it into a body of glasse, close covered & luted about, setting the same after into hot horse dung, with a square stone on the head, and covering it with the horse dung for 14. daies: after which time, take the body forth, setting it into a furnace of fine sifted ashes, well a finger breadth or more above the hony, presupposing on your part, that little peeces of flint stones be put into the hony, and then distilled with a soft fire into a receiver, well luted at the mouth, for doubt of the aire breathing forth. When the same beginneth to distill, then draw forth part of the fire (unlessse you can otherwise governe your fire by the helpe of the furnace) which comming forth white, let so long distill, till there appeare yellow drops like to golde. Upon the sight of this, set vnder another receiver, keeping diligently this first water by it selfe, and increasing the fire, let that so long distill, till certaine white smokes appeare running into the receiver, and that speedily take away, putting to another receiver, which let so long distill, untill no more will drop forth: and this last is of a ruby colour in rednesse, so that if a woman often wetting the haire of her head with this third water, sitting then in the hotte Sun, both to dry and wet them again, wearing in the meane whiles a large straw hat with an open crown, to spread the hairs vpon for the speedier drying of them, which so ordering doth not only cause the hairs to grow long & very faire but dieth them in time so yellow as gold. Also to diuers other uses this red water serues, as afore is taught in 2 other chapter.

The white water (which commeth first) by washing the face orderly with it, doth cause it to become cleare and faire, and keepeth the skin from looking olde so; a long time, as the same hath bene experienced often by the worthy Dames of Rome, Naples, and Venice. And the yellow like gold, being the second water, doth especially serue to this vse, that if any person hapneth to bee infected with the plague or pestilence, then to take two ounces of this yellowe water of Aloes Cypatick, of red Rhyzhe, & of the east saffron, of ech ten grains, and a leafe of the best golde; all which grind into fine powder, miring the same with this water, and after that giue it vnto the sicke to drinke, which no doubt will both helpe this and many other diseases.

The manner of distilling a water of hony, named the Quintessence. Chap. 33.

TO make this singular & pretious water, you must take two pounds of the purest white hony, being both cleare and pleaint in tast, which put into a body of glasse, being so bigge, that foure or fve parts of it may remaine empty, the same luted strongly about, setting the head after on it, and a receiuer aptly to the nose of the Still. When you haue thus done, then make a gentle fire at the first vnder it, but after increase the fire or heat more and more, vntill certaine white smokes appeare in the head of the glasse body, which you must workmanly cole and turne into water, by the wetting of linnen clothes in cold water, and laid on the head and nose toward the receiuer, so; that turneth into a water so red as blood: and being all come, put it into another glasse, stopping the mouth close: which let stand so long, vntill the water become very cleare, and in colour to the Rubie. Now being on this wise, distill the same againe in Balneo Mariæ, and so often repeat this, vntill you haue distilled it fire or seven times ouer, that the colour be changed in the end to the colour of golde: which then is most pleasant of sauor, and so sweete, that nothing may be compared like vnto it in fragrantnes of smell.

The Quintessence both dissolue gold, prepareth it apt to
be

be drunke, and any Jewell put into the water, it doeth also dissolue the same. Also this is named the blessed water, in that giuing to any two or thre drams to drinke, being at the point of death, doeth so suddainly recouer the person againe, as doeth the Quintessence of wine. And washing any grievous wound or stripe with the water, doth in short time heale the same. Also this pretious water doth marueilously helpe the cough, the rheume, the disease of the Splene, and many other diseases, which would scarcely be belæued. The water also ministred daily vnto a person sicke of the palsey, for the space of sixe and forty daies, will by the mighty helpe of God, and this miraculous water, thowowly heale the disease. Also this Quintessence doth helpe the falling sicknesse, and preserueth the body from putrifying, so that by all these we may learne, that this is rather a diuine water from heauen (and sent from God) to serue vnto all ages.

The manner of drawing and making waxe of the
hony combs. Chap. 34.

The hony being drawne from the combs, although some bees hang on them dead, yet put altogether into a faire pan or caldron, into which powze so much water or more, as the quantitie of the combs be. This set ouer a soft fire, vntill the same be thowowly heated and molten in the pan, and in the melting continually stir the same about with a big splatter, or some staffe, lest the ware cleaue to the pannes sides through the flame or heat of the fire, and appeare burned: after, powze the whole substance into a course hairen bag, pressing it forth into a trough, or other like vessel made for the onely purpose, on which powze two or thre kettles ful of hot water, that no dregges hang after on the ware, and by that meanes shal you haue the ware both pure and cleane. But if you will haue it cast into faire round cakes, and to be cleaner and purer, then melt the ware againe, and being molten, powze it into a cleane vessel, which washed likewise with hot water, (as aboue was taught) set after in the Sunne, by which meanes the cake will continue very long faire of colour.

What waxe is best allowed and commended.

Chap. 35.

WAr, being the food of light, and serving vnto innumerable vses of men, of al the kinds the same is best allowed and commended, which is both new made, meanely red of colour, somewhat fattie, smelling sweet, hauing some sauour in it of the hony, and cleare. Of the Ware also of sundrie Countries, that in the Country of Pontus is well commended, and the same in the Isle of Creta: next to these is the ware in the Isle of Corsica, which is made of the Wore tree, and supposed to haue some good effects in it for Medicine.

Of the great commoditie and benefite of waxe in Medicines. Chap. 36.

WAre hath a meane among heating things, both in the coling, drying, and moistning, as writeth Galen in the seuenth booke of simples, and 22. Chapter, which properly helpeth the roughnesse of the breast, when it is ioined or mixt with the oile of Violets, so that it both molifieth or softneth the sinewes, and ripeneth and dissolueth vicers. The quantitie of a pease in ware swallowed downe of nurses, or such women as giue sucke, doth dissolue the milke courded in the paps. And ten little pieces of pure new ware, vnto the bignes of a hemp seed, drunke down at one time, doeth cause the milke not to courd in the womans stomacke and breasts. If the priuy place, or thereabout, of either man or woman, happeneth to swell, then by applying an ointment made of white ware, it shortly asswageth and healeth the same. If any also hapneth to be diseased with the bloody fire, by stuffing a yong Pigeon with new ware, after roasting the same, and eating the flesh thereof, doth in short time after stay the same. Also, if a quince made hollow and filled with pure new ware, be after roasted vnder hot embers untill the same be tender, & eaten fasting without drinking after it, doth in like sort stay and helpe the perillous fire, and scouring of blood. The war besides, serueth to al maner of plaisters, ointments, suppositoies, and such like.

Of

Of that which is a stay of the combes, and made
for a defence of Bees from cold. Chap. 37.

The same made of bees at the entry of the mouth of hives,
ought to be yellow of colour, and sweet smelling like to
Storax, and drawn into a length like to Mastick, yea, that is
rather chosen, because in heating and drawing it is p[er]fect-
palest. For of it selfe this draweth forth thornes or splents
of wood run deep into the flesh, by applying it plaster wise on
the grieffe: it helpeth an old cough, by making a smoke therof,
and holding the mouth ouer it, and applied in the forme of an
ointment on ring wormes, doth speedily heale them. Now
this matter (as aboue was taught) is the stay of the Honey
combs, by which bees stop and keepe forth all maner of cold,
and other annoyances which might endamage them, the
same also being of so strong a sauor, that some vse it in the
steede of Galbanum. M. Varro nameth it a refuge of Bees
without their cotages, because Bees make the same at the en-
try of the hine.

How to make Waxe white. Chap. 38.

Wax is made white in this maner: First that kind of
war (fit for this purpose) ought to be whiter & purer,
and broken into little pieces, put after into a newe earthen
pan, pouring vpon it sufficient salt or sea water, and a little
siter bzused, which seeth al together. When y^e same hath boi-
led twice or thrice vp, remoue the pan from the fire, & the war
being thorowly colde, take forth of the pan, and scraping off
the filth, if any such hang on, put again into new salt water,
seething it againe. And when the ware hath so often boiled
(as aboue was taught) then take off the panne from the fire,
and in the bottome of a new earthen panne, melt it with cold
water, which dippe by little and little into the ware, draw-
ning it a little, so that the water be aboue the Ware, where-
by the Ware may become very thinne, and be the sooner
cooled it selfe: then taking by and by out the mould or bot-
tome, drawe first the round Cake off, and wetting againe
the bottome in colde water, dippe it into the Ware, and the
same so long do, vntill you haue drawne of all that war into
cakes.

cakes of like sort, which after stitch thorow with thred, hanging the cakes on a rope one from another, and that in the day time, often wetting them in the Sunne, but in the night time in the Moone light: and so long doe this, until the wax be white. And if any desireth to haue ware whiter then this, then let him doe the like as abovesaid, but boile the wax often. Some in stead of the salt Sea-water, take strong Wine water, in which they boile the wax in the same maner twice or thrice, as aboue was taught. And Paulus Euerdus in his booke of Confections, teacheth the making of ware white two manner of waies.

How you may make red Waxe. Chap. 39.

That you may colour and make Ware red, take vnto one pound of ware, thzee ounces of very cleare Turpentine, if it be in summer, but if it be in winter, then take foure ounces: now these dissolue and melt together ouer a soft fire, and taking it from the fire, let it coole a little, after which put in Vermillion finely ground on a Marble stone, and sweet Oyle, let oyle, of each one ounce, mixing these well, stir all together diligently. But some in stead of Vermillion, do take red lead, which is little commended, except there be thzee times so much of the red lead as of the Vermillion put in. And in the like sort may you make greene ware, if in stead of the Vermillion you take so much of greene Copozas finely ground, as you did of the Vermillion.

How to draw a profitable oyle out of Waxe,
for sundry vses. Chap. 40.

The Oyle of ware, is miraculous and diuine in working, because it serueth in a maner vnto all griefes. Reymond Lullo greatly commendeth this oyle, approuing it rather as a celestially and diuine remedy, and that this in wounds doth worke most miraculously (which for his maruellous commidity, is not so well allowed of the common Chirurgions) because this pretious oyle healeth a wound, be the same neuer so wide and big, (being befoze wide stitched vp) in the space of ten or twelue daies at the most: but those which are small this oyle healeth in thzee daies, by annointing onely on the cuts

cuts oꝝ wounds, and laying after linnen clouts, (being wet in the said oyle) vpon the wounds. For inward diseases the said oyle woꝝketh miraculously (if that you miniffer oꝝ giue a dram at a time in white wine to drinke) and stayeth also the shedding of haire, either on the head oꝝ beard, by annointing the places with this oyle. Besides these, it is miraculous in the procuring of vaine, being mightily stopped, and helpeth alsoitches and paine in the loynes, by drinkeing the like quantitie of the oyle aboue taught in white wine.

Now the making and drawing of this oyle is on this wise. First take a body of Glasse named a Retort, which strongly lute about with clay & flockes, diligently tempered together with salt water: after the body is thus fenced, and thorough drie, put in a pound oꝝ moze of pure new ware, so that the said war filleth not aboue half your body, and to euery pound of war, poure in foure ounces of the pouder of red brick, finely brused, which after set into an earthen pot, filling it round about with fine sifted ashes oꝝ sand. After this, set the potte with the body in it on a fornace, making a soft fire at the first vnder it, and after encreasing a little moze your fire, distill them so long, vntill all your oyle be come, which after a while will congeale in the receiuer, but it maketh no great matter although the oyle so doe, for it is neuerthelesse in his perfection: because that if you should distill it so often ouer, vntill it will congeale oꝝ stiffen no moze in the receiuer, then shal you make it ouer hot, and so quicke in the mouth that it is not possible by any meanes to drinke it downe. But being once distilled, you may either giue it in Wine to drinke, oꝝ annoint with the oyle vpon any place of the body where you will, which will alwaies doe good, and hurt in no manner.

And in consideration of these aboue taught, you may euidently learne and perceiue, that this miraculous Oyle ought to bee had in great estimation of the common sort.

Another excellent way to drawe oyle of waxe, that greatly helpeth the colde Gout, the Sciatica, the swelling of the legs, and all other griefes proceeding of colde. Chap. 41.

TAke of pure new ware, so much as you list, which put into a pan ouer the fire to melt, and being molten, haue by you in a readinesse another pan wel glazed, & cleane within, filled with good and perfect wine, into which poure your molten ware, letting it soke and dwinke in well, and wash it often in the said wine: after this, take the ware forth, melting it againe on the fire, and being molten, wash the same againe in pure wine, so that euery time melting the ware, poure it into fresh wine, washing and soking it in the same diligently, and after wping it well with your hands: being bled thus, melt and wash againe in the aboue said manner eight times together: then set the same forth (being a cleare season & aire) all the night, after which put the ware into a Retorte, with a little Mumia and oyle of Yperidon, or Saint Iohns wort, and a little old oyle: although without these it may do good, yet mixed with these, it worketh far better then used alone.

Now to returne to the former matter: This crooked body or Retorte, set in fine sifted ashes, & a gentle fire made vnder it untill all the oyle do run forth, and in this comming forth of the oyle shall appeare all the foure Elements, the aire, the water, earth and fire, which wil orderly appeare in the receiver, right maruelous to see. And the oyle being thus fully drawne, worketh miraculously in all diseases which procede of a cold cause.

The conclusion to the Reader.

THus gentle Reader I haue (I trust) fully satisfied thy desire in as many things as are needfull to be knowne: wherefore I commit this my little Booke to thy gentle iudgement. If thou maist receive any profit or commoditie thereby, I shalbe glad of it: and if not, yet fauourably let it passe from thee to others, whose knowledge and experience is lesse then thine herein, that they may gather such things as to them are strange, though to thee well knowne before.

And thus briefly I commit you to Almightye

G O D.

Certaine

Certaine Husbandly Coniectures of
dearch and plentie for euer.

C H A P. I.



First consider and marke, that how the weather is a day befoze, the day present, and the day after the Suns entrance into the signe Aries, and such like shall the weather be (foz the most part) in these thzee moneths, September, October,

and Nouember.

And loke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into the signe of Leo, as the day befoze, and the day after, and such commonly shalbe in December, Ianuary, & February, foz if the winde shal then blow out of the North oꝝ East, and those daies dꝛie, then shall follow a very cold season in those thzee moneths: but if the winde blowe out of the South oꝝ West, and that it raineth in those thzee dayes, then ice to follow in those thzee moneths. And if the weather in those thzee daies shall be neither wholly dꝛie noꝝ wholly moist, then shall follow an vnstedfast winter.

And like as the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into the signe Libra, as at the day of the entrance, the day befoze and the day after, such (foz the most part) shall bee the spring in March, Aprill, and May.

And loke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into Aquarius, at the day of the entrance, the day befoze and the day after, such (foz the most part) shall the weather be in June, Iuly, and August.

And many ancient men affirme, that like as the weather shalbe whiles the Sunne is running by the signe Libra, and vnto the 20. degre of Scorpio, which time is from that day (named the exaltation of the crosse) vnto the day of al Saints, such foz the most part shall the yeare following be, as in diuiding that foresaid time into twelue moneths, and that foure daies do answere to each moneth, of the which foure daies,

that each one of the foure doth declare the condition of the quarter following : and beginning also to reckon Nouember as the first moneth of the yeare.

And the generall signes of dearth & plenty after the minds of the ancient husband men be these : as the ouer-much coldnes drying, the ouermuch moisture softning, the ouermuch heat greatly burning, and the ouermuch drinelle putrifying and working into dust : For when any of these qualities shall exceed in the proper time, but especially in that time which is to the corne and fruits doe not agree, then shall dearth and scarcity both of fruits and corne ensue.

As for example, when the month of March shall be ouer moist and wet, which rather ought to be drie, and that the month of Aprill shall be drie, which then ought to be moist, doth after pronounce the penury of the fruits of the earth.

And if that part also of Summer shalbe wet, in which the corne doth then fall vnto ripenes, that rather ought to be drie, doth after signifie the scarcity both of corne and other fruits of the earth.

And the like may be said of the other constitutions, for which when the Elementall qualities shalbe in such a condition as doe best agree, then doe they promise both fruitfulness and plentifulnesse.

And if in the spring be signes of cold and drought, and that in the end of the spring nere the full mone be frosts, then shall follow very small yelde of the fruits of the earth, and little wine that yeare following.

And if the spring be drie, then few shall the fruits of the trees be, yet good : and scarcity of corne shall be that yeare.

And if the spring shalbe cold, the fruits of the earth shalbe late ripe.

And if the spring and Summer shalbe ouer wet or misty or cold, with cloudy weather for many dayes together, whiles all the trees haue borne their blossomes, and the fieldes their flowres, and begin to shed their flowre, then shall follow the scarcity of fruits of the earth in that yeare, or else a verie great rot of them, and many sicknesses in that yeare.

And

And if the Summer be drier then customably, then shall follow the scarcity of corne, yet the Summer fruits shall that yeare be sound, the fishes then die, and most sharpe sicknesses shall raigne that yeare.

And if the Summer shall be hotter then customably, then shall follow many sicknesses or diseases, yet great plenty of the Summer fruits that yeare.

And if the Summer shall be colder then customably, then shall follow a healthfull yeare, but the fruits of the earth shall late ripe that yeare.

And here further note of the spring, that if in the same season of the spring, there shall bee a more plenty of all flowres and fruites toward then customably, doeth after signifie a scarcity of corne that yeare, vnlesse the heat of Summer doth otherwise refoyme the same.

And the wise and ancient husbandmen haue obserued, that when the winter shall send downe store of raine on the earth, so that the same excede not or bee too much, and that the March following be drie, and the Aprill wette by often showres, and that the same parte also of Summer bee drie in which the corne falleth to ripenesse, then doeth the same promise a plentifull yeare.

And when that part of the harvest shall be faire and drie in which the wheate is sown, and the part of summer in which corne falleth to ripenesse shall be faire and drie, the spring also meanly warme, doth then not onely promise fruitfulnessse, but a plentifull yeare of corne.

And now the Harvest moister then customably, doth putrifie the grapes, and causeth a smal yeld of wines that yeare with the scarcity of other fruits.

And also if in the latter part of harvest it be moister, then in the yeare following shall ensue scarcity of corne.

And if the Harvest be drier in the first part, then in the yeare following, shall be dear, and that small graine named Mil, and such like, be deare.

And if the harvest be hotter then customably, then shall follow a diseased yeare, and that dangerous.

And if the Haruest be colder then cōstomably, then shall follow the losse of the Haruest fruits, both in the store and tast of them.

And the winter cold and drie, is of all husbandmen commended, but extreame cold both then flea the tree, especially those which soy in a warme aire, as the Pomegranate tree, the Olive tree, the Lemmon tree, the Figge tree, the Peach tree, and such like.

And if the winter exceed in the extremity of coldnes, then doth it signifie harme, both to the Vine and Olive tree, the Cherry-tree, and the yellow Quince tree.

And if the winter be hot and moist, then the same doeth pronounce an vnhealthfull yeare, and danger to seedes and fruits of the earth.

And the excesse quality, and dessemperature of any of the foure quarters, is euill and dangerous to the fruites of the earth.

And the plenty of snow falling in due season of the yeare, doeth fatten the earth, (and if the others doe helpe) then doth it signifie the plenty of cozne and other fruites of the earth.

And if any washeth their hands with snow, it doeth then make them studdy, in that the snow is ingendred of a vapour somewhat drie and earthly.

And the snow nourisheth sheep and other beasts, in that the snow is ingendred of moist aire, in which life consisteth.

And the snow increaseth the cozne and other growing things on earth, in that by his coldnesse it so doeth shut the pores of the earth, that the heat with the which the seedes of the earth be cherished, cannot then breake forth.

And the Snow heateth and cherisheth the earth by the thicke couering of it, and defendeth the græne wheat and other seeds sown, from the sharpe & vehement cold of the aire.

And the snow may be kept all the yeare vnder the earth, couered with straw, and profitable it is to mixe with wine in an hot Summer, and necessary also to coole the aire about sicke persons.

And the vnprofitable falling of the dew, mists, or fogs (especially when all crescent things doe bud forth, and shewe their flowre) as in the month of Aprill and May, as well on the trees, cozne, and grasse, which beasts then feeding on bee greatly harmed through the dew fallen, and all other things also much harmed by the same, as hath bin oft obserued by the ancient and wise husbandmen.

And in the overmuch falling of raine, frosts, or haile, especially in the spring time, and in the winter time, whilest the cozne is yet as grasse, the excesse of raine also doth then threaten the scarcety of victuals to ensue that yeare.

And the great plenty of beanes, after the opinion of the common husbandmen, through much raine fallen, doth fore-shew the scarcety of Cozne, and especially of Wheat that yeare.

And a like iudgement may be giuen of the Oake and Holly tree, which if they beare plentifully, then a fruitfull yeare followeth, and contrariwise bearing but few, then a deere yeare of cozne doth ensue.

And the great plenty of Grasshoppers, woymes, and Caterpillers, appearing in their proper time more then customably, do not only declare harme to vines and seedes sown, but to all fruits that yeare.

And the greater stoe of winds, not onely cause little fruits, but scarcety of cozne to ensue that yeare.

And a stiles in a manner throughout the yeare, doth declare a likelihood of the plague to ensue shortly after.

And the ancient Hippocrates writeth, that when in the summer the North wind long continueth, and in the haruest the South wind, with stoe then of raine, it doth after threaten in the Winter the head-ache, hoarsenesse of voice, the cough, consumptions or impostumes to ensue.

And if after a drie Summer (as writeth the ancient Physitions) the North winde doeth long continue in the Haruest, then the bodies of Women, and such diseased with a most sickness, do then in that season the rather recouer health, in that the vzinnesse of the seasons and winds is contrary to the
excesse

excesse and the rotnenneſſe of the humours by which the ſickneſſes were cauſed.

And if the Winter ſhall be hot and moiſt, and the ſpring cold and drie, then doth the ſame thzeaten ſickneſſe to men in the ſummer, and that women with child ſhall haue vntime-ly birthes of a light occaſion.

And Hippocrates writeth, that when in the winter be longer Noztherly windeſ, and in the ſpring longer Southerly windeſ, and that rainie and wet in the Summer following, then doth follow agues, and the diſeaſes of the eies.

And when after a cold Winter, there be South windeſ and rainie in the ſpring, and that the Summer be drie, then in the Harueſt following do agues enſue, paines alſo of the bowels, thzough the great ſcouring of the body, and ſickneſſes, with the which old men, diſeaſed perſons, and childzen be then moze pained.

And when the South-weſt winde doth long blow about the end of harueſt, then thoſe perſons diſeaſed with a long ſickneſſe, doe ſhortly after die.

And a further knowledge of dearth and plenty of victuals, and of ſickneſſes, may be had on this wiſe:

Fiſt in the end of Harueſt, cut open two or thzee Wake-apples, looking whether there be in them either flies, woꝝms, or ſpiders: and if in the Wake-apple be found woꝝmes or magots, then they ſignifie (after the opinion of ancient hulbandmen) both dearth and ſcarſity in that yeare.

And if in the Wake-apple cut open, be found like to flies, it doth after thzeaten battell to enſue that yeare.

And if in the Wake-apple be found like to ſpiders, then do they foꝛeſhew the plague or peſtilence to enſue in that yeare.

And to conclude, the only pꝛoofe of the foꝛmer taught, ſhall moue the Reader better to credite theſe.



*An everlasting Prognostication of the
state and condition of euery yeare , by the onely*

Kalends of Ianuarie : written by that ancient
learned *Leopoldus Austriacus*, and others, for
the commoditie of the wise husbandmen.

CHAP. II.



When the first day of Ianuary shall happen on
the Sunday , then the winter shall be tempe-
rate and good, yet windy, the spring wet, the
summer dry, and the harvest hurtful through
winds. So that victuals shall be reasonable
good cheape, plenty of wines, the good health
and increase of sheepe and other cattell , and the indifferent
plenty of hony , and the like plenty also of Peason, Beanes,
Welches, and the hearbs and fruits of the gardens. Also yong
men shall die that yeare, and a discord to be feared betweene
kings, or else some manifest perils to happen vnto kings and
great Prelats in authoritie, and that diuers robberies shall
be attempted that yeare. And if controuersies happen be-
twene Princes, then a conclusion of peace to be looked for in
that yeare.

And if the first day of Ianuary shall happen on the Sun-
day, then shall the winter be warme , the spring very colde,
with snow and frostes that season , the Summer boisterous
through windes, and haile oftentimes , and land floods shall
be somewhere, and the harvest very drie. So that sicknesses
shall ensue, through which many of the simple sort shall then
die, & diuers also shall die through suddaine plague then hap-
ning

ning: Also the likelihood of great alteration to ensue, and the ancient women to mourne, Kings to die, and a great slaughter to be feared by the sword: Also small store of wines, the death of Bees, and little honey that yeare.

And if the first beginning of January shall be on Tuesday, then the winter shall bee long, and much snow in that season, and the likelihood of land floods, through much raine then falling: the Spring windy, the Summer very wet, and the Harvest abounding in grosse and rotten humours (so that a most grievous plague is to be feared, and especially of women) and the likelihood of many shipwrecks, and very great cares and troubles to happen vnto Princes, with the scarcity of the fruits of trees: and corne shall be deare, and a suddaine death of cattell to be feared that yeare.

Also wood that yeare shall be deare, and the likelihood of fearefull fires, and that the plague to be grievous that yeare. And yet there shall be plenty of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and store of herbes and flowres. And there shall be plenty of honey, oyle, and wines that yeare.

And when the first of January beginneth on the Wednesday, then shall the winter be warme and calme, the Spring wet, and disposed to sicknesses, the Summer hott, and the Harvest vnprofitable, so that long sicknesses are to be feared, and the quartan Ague with them. Also yong men shall then be sicke and in scapardie of death, and women the like, and in sundry places shall happen a famine, with a great brute of strange newes. And there is also to be feared the grievous passions of the heart, the idleness of minde, or rather distraught, and the diseases of the matrice in women: and yet the plenty of oyle and wines, but the scarcity of corne to be doubted that yeare.

And if the beginning of January be on Thursday, then shall the winter be calme and temperate, the Spring windie, the Summer vnseasonable, and the Harvest drye, so that corne and victuals shall then be deare, yet store of oyle and wines that yeare. And there is a likelihood of light sicknesses to happen vnto the common people, but more dangerous sicknesses

les vnto the richer sort. And the blearednesse of the eyes is also to be feared, and that yong children shall then die, battels procured, and the sedition of souldiers, and an earthquake to be doubted that yeare.

Also great talke of newes shall be in Kings and Princes houses, and great perils also to be doubted to happen vnto Princes in that yeare.

And if the first day of January happen on Friday, then shall the winter be very colde and drie, the Spring boisterous and wette, the Summer temperate, the Harvest more wette then drie: so that blearednes and other diseases, with the filthinesse of matter running in the eyes, is to be feared, and the pin and web is likewise to be doubted to happen that yeare. And yong children shall then die: and a likelihood that yong women shall be allured vnto wanton loue, through the flattery and great perswasions of men. Also a suspicion of battels to ensue in that yeare, and the plague and robberies then to happen. Also plenty of fruits is then promised, although much haile fall that yeare.

And if the beginning of January happen on Satterday, then the winter shall be windie and vnstable, the Spring windie and vnconstant of weather, the Summer vnstable with many tempests, and the Harvest drie: so that victuals shall be deare, small store of corne, and little fruit that yeare. Also sheepe shall not well prosper in that yeare, and a likelihood then of the death of swine, and that wood shall be deare.

Also there shall be many tertian agues, and diuers other diseases reigning among men, so that olde men shall then die, and a likelihood of the death of many men by the plague. Also many fires shall be heard of, little store of wines, oyle and honey, yet plenty of hay that yeare.

And if new yeares night (being the first night of January) shall be calme and cleare, without winde and raine, then doth the same promise a prosperous yeare following.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blowe out of the East, then doth the same signifie the death of cattell to ensue that yeare.

And if the same night the wind happen to blow out of the West, then a likelihoode of the death of Kings and Princes to ensue that yeare.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blow out of the South, then doth the same signifie the death of many persons to ensue that yeare.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blow out of the North, then doth the same signifie the small yeelde of all fruits of the earth that yeare.

How to foreknow the state of the yeare, by the onely rising of the dogge starre, out of the husbandry of Diophanes. Chap. 3.

AND about the knowledge of this, there is to be considered and noted, in what signe the Moone shall then be, at first appearance of the dogge starre about the earth in our Realme of England, which generally be reckoned is about the seuenth day of July.

And now if the Moone runne then in the signe of Aries at the first appearance of the dog star, it doth after declare the death of cattell and much raine. So that small yeeld of cozne, yet plenty of oyle shall be that yeare.

And if the Moone run then in the signe Taurus at the first appearance of the dog star, then it doth signifie much raine, fogs, and mists, that shall harme much that yeare.

And if the Moone run then in the signe Gemini at the first appearance of the dog starre, it doth after promise plenty of cozne and wine, and all other fruits of the earth, yet a diseased yeare, and to be doubted that a King shall then die, and that rebellion also shall be moued that yeare.

And if the Moone runne then in the signe Cancer at the first appearance of the dog star about the earth, it doth after threaten drought, with great scarcity of cozne to ensue in that yeare.

And if the Moone runne then in the signe Leo at the first sight of the dogge starre, it after promiseth plentie both of wines

wines and oyle, and good cheape of cozne and other victu-
als that yeare: and yet to be feared the commotions of the
common people, and slaughter the same to ensue, with an
earthquake and land floods to happen in that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Virgo* at the first
appearance of the dog star, it after signifieth plenty of show-
ers and the great store of fruits of the earth, and the cheape-
nesse also of cattell: and yet to be feared that women shall be
delivered before their time in that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Virgo* at the first
appearance of the dog starre, it after declareth the stirring
up of a king, and a commotion of the common people: and yet
the plenty of fruits of the trees, although there be all likelihood
of the scarcitie of cozne and oyle in that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Scorpio* at the
first appearance of the dog starre, it after declareth the com-
motion of *Priestes*, the destruction of *Bees*, and an insectue
aire to ensue that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Sagittarius* at
the first sight of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after sig-
nifieth a rainie yeare, yet fruitfull, and the plenty of cozne,
and ioy among men: and yet is to be feared the death of cat-
tell, and the multitude of sowles in that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Capricornus* at
the first appearance of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it af-
ter declareth the commotion of souldiers, and great store of
raine, and yet plenty of cozne, wines, and oyle, and all other
things good cheape in that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Aquarius* at the
first appearance of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after
signifieth the death of some King or Prince, the scarcitie of
cozne, and the plenty of such flies with long hinder legs that
burne cozne by the touching of it: and yet little raine and the
plague to ensue in that yeare.

And if the *Mone* runne then in the signe *Pisces* at the
first appearance of the dog starre aboue the earth, it after de-
clareth much raine, and the death of birds: and yet doct it
promise

promise a sufficient store, and laudable plentifulnesse, both of
Wines, Oyle, and Cozne, but many persons shall be diseased
in that yeare.

Other profitable instructions, right necessary for
husbandmen to know. Chap. 4.

AND first, if the horne of the Ramme (neare his eare) be
boyled, the same doth tame his fiercenes. And if his right
genitour be trusted ty before he goe to couer the Ewe, then
doth he beget an Ewe lambe. And if the left be thus strait
trusted ty, and the right hanging downe, then doth he beget
a hee lambe.

And if in the time of the South winde blowing, the Ram
doth then couer the Ewe, he doth after beget a shee lambe.

And if when the North wind bloweth, the Ram doth then
couer the Ewe, doth after beget a hee lambe. And of what co-
lour also the veines shalbe vnder the tongue of the Ewe, such
shall the colour of the skin of the lambe be: for if she hath black
veines vnder the tongue, then the lambe shalbe of black skin,
and if white veines vnder the tongue, then shall she haue a
white lambe: and if of diuers colours, then the lambe shall be
of diuers colours on the skin. And that ancient Iaac writeth,
that Rams in their yong yeares be of lesser moisture & clam-
minesse, then be the sucking lambs, and this is through their
age and qualitie then ruling.

And therefore the flesh of yong weathers is better, and
ingenders better blood then the sucking lambs.

And this is here spoken of such Rammes as be gelded, in
that their moisture and hotnesse is then temperate.

And the Weathers ouer-olde are to be refused in eating,
that they be then colde and drie without moisture, and they
smallly nourish, and hardly digest.

Also harte and other flesh of beasts being olde, be euill to
eate, through the coloures and drynes, and through the lack of
the moisture and hotnesse. And when the old Rams in their
time to couer the Ewe, be sooner moued therto then the yong
Rams, it doth then signifie a good and profitable season to
enſue in that yeare, and a good season and prosperous also for
sheepe.

Sheepe. But if in the proper time to couer the Ewes, the yong Rams be sooner prouoked thereto then the olde Rams, then doth follow the great rot or murraine of sheepe in that yeare.

Also Ewes by drinking of water conceiue the sooner with lambe, and for this the shepheards giue them salt to eate, wherby in moze drinking of water, they may so conceiue with yong, & they are also by that meanes preserved the healthfuller. And in the haruest also some shepheards giue them to eate gourds seasoned with salt, to increase their milke, for by that meanes doth the milke moze plentifully issue forth of their teats, and the Ewes do sooner conceiue. Also in Summer is the colde Northerly water good for them, and in the Haruest the warme Southerly water good for them.

Also to let sheepe feede in the end of the day, is greatly commended: and if they also stirre but little abroad, the same is thought very profitable, in that the much iourneying, and labouring of them hither and thither, doth cause them to become leane. Also the skillfull shepheards know which sheepe will well indure the sharpe winter, and which not, in that vpon some of the sheepes backs (as they asserme) ice may be found, and vpon other some none at all. So that by this may be learned, that such sheepe which be weak, a man can hardly pluck off the ice from their backs. And further learne, that those sheepe which haue long tailes, may hardlier abide the sharpe cold water, then those hauing broad tailes: and the sheepe also curled of haire (doe in like sort) hardlier indure the bitter winter: and besides these, the thunder greatly harmeth sheep, especially if any Ewe being with yong hapneth to be alone at that instant, for that she then being with lambe, both of the fearful noise of the thunder, deliuer her lamb befoze the time: and for a speciall remedy to save that vntimely casting of lambes at such times, the skillfull shepheards haue found out that the onely drining of many Ewes together is a sure safeguard to them to auoyd this occasion. Besides, if you will remove the rot of sheep, that they die no moze: then take the belly of a Ram, and seeth the same in wine and water together, which after mixe with water, & giue the same generally to al
the

the sheepe to dzinke, for by that meanes shall they againe be recovered of their disease. And here learne, that the fleshy of sheepe, and other sower tasted beasts, which commonly feed in moist ground, is euill to feed vpon, for the hard digestion of the same. Also learne, that the good sheepe are knowen by their age, as being neither too old, nor yet as lambs, and by the forme also they are knowen, if so be you find them large of body.

And they besides haue much and soft Wooll, and both thicke and long haire, especially on the nape, and about the necke, and the like haire on the belly. And both the health and sicknesse of sheepe may be knowen, if so be any open their eies, and finde the veines within to be red and small, it doeth vndoubtedly declare them to be sound and good: but if those veines shall appeare white, or red and big, then those sheepe are diseased and weake.

And if the sheepe goe lustily and boldly by the way, it is a sure token that they be sound:

but sadly and hanging downe the head, then be

they diseased. These hitherto of the yeare,

ly coniectures, and other rules, onely

meete for husbandmen to vnder-

stand and know.

An





A most profitable rule for the preservation of mans health, thorowout the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the minde of diuers learned men of the Vniuersitie of Padua.

CHAP. V.

January.



And first, in the moneth of January draw no blood out of any veine, vnlesse a great necessity constraineth thereto, that you cannot otherwise chuse. But if you blæde by veine, beware of taking any cold in this moneth, so nigh as you can, and walke not abroade in the night time: and vse to eate then the best confectiõs, and to drinke often white wine in this moneth, for that flegme doth then increase. And to fast long in this moneth, is hurtfull to the body: but to eat salets well prepared with oyle and spices, is well commended. And wash not thy head in this moneth, but to bath your body, or to take a vomit, you may safely doe in this moneth.

Also take euery morning once (thorowout this moneth) for threë houres before dinner, a little quantity of rosed hony, for that the same doth comfort the stomacke, and cleanse the body both of choler and flegme. And drinke also these spices either in wine or ale, as Graines, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloues and such like, for those be greatly commended in this month.

February.

In the moneth of February, vse to eate confectiõs candied with hony, for that they purge the body. And to eate Apples

ples in this moneth is commended : but to eate often fresh
 Weete, or other meates that bee moist, or to eate any pottes
 herbes, except Parcelly or Smallech, is thought hurtfull.
 And rather eat oftner sodden meat then roasted in this mo-
 neth, for that the same doth keepe the body soluble. Also to
 bathe in this Moneth is not hurtfull, nor to take a potion or
 to blæde in that veine vnder the thumb, and you may safe-
 ly take pills in this Moneth, to purge the heade, for that a
 man feeleth himselfe more grieued with a heauinesse in the
 head in this Moneth, then in any other Moneth.

And to eate Hony with bzeade in this Moneth is com-
 mended, for that the same doth purge the bzeck and bladder.

March.

In the Moneth of March vse to eate pleasant and wel spi-
 ced meats, but sharpe meates refraine in this Moneth, and
 to drinke pleasant and strong wine is now commended.
 And eate often Leake pottage: and to bath often in that Mo-
 neth, is greatly commended. But beware of taking any po-
 tion, to purge or blæde by veine in this Moneth. And vse to
 eate often of the herbe Penitroyall, for that the same doeth
 heate the stomacke, and causeth then the better digestion.
 And in your salets also eate of the herbe Betonie, for that
 the same doeth clære and helpe the sight, and much amen-
 deth the head. Also Graines, Ginger, Nutmegs, Calingale,
 Pepper, and such like spices, be profitable to drinke in this
 Moneth.

Aprill.

In this Moneth of Aprill both blood increase, wherfore to
 eate pleasant meats, and riuer-fish, and salets often, is now
 commended. And to blæde by veine in any part of the bo-
 dy, except the vein of the lungs, is now thought profitable, for
 by opening the veine is dangerous, but to open at the middle
 veine is greatly commended, and likewise bathing often in
 this Moneth. And to purge the stomacke with a potion, or o-
 therwise, is very good; but eat no kind of roots in this moneth.
 And to eat al kind of fleshy, except pigs, is thought good in this
 moneth:

moneth: and you may now enter into Physick for any griefe of the body, (but drinke moderately) and you may also safely blæde for the scabs in this Moneth: and vse to eate Betonie and Pints prepared in Honey, and drinke first in the morning without eating of any thing, and to drinke also the herbe Grace in wine is now profitable: but beware of eating any kind of salt fish in this Moneth, for that the same doeth engender both the itch and the scab on the body.

Maie.

In the month of May, wash often thy face with faire running water: But vse not to eate of such meates as be hot of quality: and blæde in any part of the body where need shall be, but it is most profitable to blæde in the feet, for that the blood then hath his course downe to the feet: and beware also of eating any stale fish, or tainted flesh that soze smelleth: and eate your meales now in due season, and drinke but little wine in this moneth. And to bathe in any condition in this moneth is not vnprofitable: and to drinke clarified whay simply, or dralone with cold herbes, is now very healthfull vnto hotte stomacks. And pure wine also mixed with goats milke, and with that to annoint both the head and back, is greatly commended: and to drinke sharpe drinks in this moneth, is thought good, and to take Physick if need requireth. But eate no head or some of any beast in this moneth, because of the moisture of the herbes and grasse which the beasts doe eate in the same. And to drinke wormwood wine is thought very profitable in this moneth, and to eate fenell roots tenderly sodden. And to take gentle Laxes to purge the blood and body is now thought good, and to sleepe after dinner. And also some thinke, that to blæd on the head veine, or liuer veine, is profitable in this moneth.

Iune.

In the Moneth of Iune, abstaine from all such meates as doe engender flegme, but drinke of the pleasantest Wine, and sometimes in the morning fasting a cuppe of white wine, for that the same doth now purge choler in man.

And to eat salets of Letuce prepared with vineger, is thought profitable, for that they be good against the humours which do descend vnto the kidneis: and vse to eat such meats as be light of digestion, and arise alwaies (this moneth thorow) from the table somewhat hungry, and arise also timely in the morning, and exercise your body with some long walke. And any may safely bleed that needeth in this month: but beware of eating milke, vnlesse the same be well sodden, and likewise take heed both of the eating of chéele and apples in this moneth. And a man may bathe himselfe in this moneth, so that he tarre not long therein. And to wash the feet often in colde water, is likewise commended.

Iulie.

In the moneth of Iuly, it is not good to eate strong meats, nor those which do greatly nourish, or pleasant spiced meats, for the hotnesse of the season, for that the Dog daies be entered in. And therefore beware of bleeding by veine, or of taking any medicine to purge the body: and yet may a man bleed a little by cupping in the bath. And in this month, and in the other month following, a man may drinke but little wine, for that the same doth drie the stomacke and liuer, and increaseth choler: and the smallest and weakest drinks are now to be used fasting against choler: and in this moneth refraine your selfe from the venereal act, as nigh as you can: and vse to eat euery morning fasting a litle Sage and herbe Grace, with a bit of bread: and beware of eating any muddy fish in this moneth (taken with the net) lest through the eating of them you catch some sicknesse, and die thereof: and vse to eat Geruice in all your meats, for that the same doth cole and refresh the body, but refraine the eating of fruits in this moneth: and very healthfull it is vnto the body to annoint the necke and breast with the iuyce of herbe Grace, Slope, and Smalleche mixed with Honey, and enter into a bathe fasting, yet bathe but moderately all the moneth thorow, for that otherwise to bathe is very dangerous in this moneth: and beware of either eating Bets, or Lettuce, in this moneth, for that they haue nowe a kinde of poyson in them,
which

which now be right perillous : and yet profitable it is vnto Husbandmen to eate both Carlike, Sage, and fatte Bacon.

August.

In the moneth of August doeth choler with melancholy encrease, so that now do happen agues, with colde and burning, and other grienous sicknesses hardly cured. Wherefore a man must now refraine the venereal act, and order himselfe in a moderate condition, as sleeping but little in the day time all this moneth, and to beware of taking any colde, or to bleed by veine, or to vomite, or otherwise to take any medicine to purge the body: and refraine from eating any potteherbes all this moneth thorow: and refraine from eating any Cabbages, for that they engender melancholy, and cause the ague in men: and vse to eate Sage in all your meate, for that the same is profitable vnto the body, and Mellons the like, yet lesser in quantitie at your meales: and drinke both good and pleasant wine, and eate both pullets and beale, for that such comfort the body: and vse to eate often Cinnamon in your meats. And an ointment thus prepared, doth helpe many diseases of the body: take Penitroyall, hearbe-Grace, Fenel, Smallech, the seeds of Alope, Bay-berries, and Alom, vnto which ad Dyle Oliue, tempering all together with honny, and after anointing the body therewith: and to eat also Lettuce, and all other things that be cold of quality, is now commended.

September.

In the moneth of September eate all manner of meates you list, for that in the same moneth all things bee in their proper vertue. And for so much as the haruest is well entred, therefore it is now good to take a gentle purgation, like as is the flowze of Cassia new drawne, that gently purgeth the body, and comforteth nature: wherefore this likewise ought to bee done, to the end to preserue the body in health vnto the next spring, & also to vse cordiall powders in your broths, vnto the spring. Also in this moneth may simples be well applied in any sickness, for that the roots, the fruits, and seeds, do

abound now, and be also thozow ripe. And what could not aptly bee ministred in the Moneth of May with simples, may in this Moneth be done with them. And to eate Pomegranates and Goates milke, is well commended in this Moneth, for that they both increase blood, and cause a good colour.

October.

In the Moneth of October doe your bodies waie drie and the bzaine moist, and greater bones, and therefore it behooueth to eate roasted meates often in this Moneth, and to drinke pleasant wine. Also drinke new wines, and eate pleasant meat often, as Goats milke fasting, for that the same doeth now purifie the blood and cleanse the lungs: and eat often apple-tarts, prepared with comfortable spices and Sugar, in that they comfort greatly the stomacke: but wash not the head in all this Moneth. And you may let blood in this Moneth, or give a potion to purge, like as the necessitie of the sickness or disease shall so require: and beware of eating too much of new fruits: but the eating of the Radish roote is yet profitable, and to eat mustard also with all meats is likewise commended: also all wilde fowles eaten now, bee thought good, and Clones with Cinamon, are profitable in this Moneth.

Nouember.

In the moneth of Nouember is melancholy encreased, and blood decreased, and for this it is profitable to eate both eggs and hony, and to vomite also sundry times, and salt pouder red meats is now commended: and bath not in this moneth, or but little if neede so requireth, for that it is thought to bee the most perilous moneth of the yeare to bathe in: and besides, the blood is now restrained within the arteries of the body, which by sweating in the hot bath should so cause the stirring vp of humours, and a stilling from the head, with incurable paines of the head, and darknes of sight, and paines otherwise of the eyes. And in this moneth you may (if neede so require) either purge the body, or blæde by veine: also the eating now of Hony, Ginger, Pulle, and Goates milke, is profitable

profitable to the body, for that they increase blood, and cause a good colour to man: and Cinamon and Ginger drunke often in this moneth is greatly commended, for that they giue health. And in this moneth goe not timely forth, because of the stinking mists and fogges which then be that greatly harne the head, and therefore let the Sun be of some height before your going forth of the dōyes.

December.

In the moneth of December doth melancholy and flegme encrease, which be both heauie and cold: and therefore a man must now keepe the body and head very well from cold, and to eate such things as be of hot quality: also to eate pottage made of Coleworts and Cabages, and to eat roasted Onions prepared in salets, and either roasted apples or peares after meals, be greatly commended: and eat the flesh of weathers, Hammes, and Goats, also Capons, and all manner of land fowles, but no water fowles: and blood but a little in this moneth, and that in the head beine, for that in no moneth of the yeare man hath lesse store of blood then in this: and goe not forth of your house in the night time, except you bee otherwise constrained, for that the moist aire of the night doeth much harne the body: and eat now Parcelv rootes tenderly sodden, for that they much comfort the stomacke: and eate Rape rootes also roasted vnder the embers (all this moneth thozow) for the health of the body. And eate not in this moneth neither of crows nor swines flesh, for that they be now ouer moist, and also vnprofitable vnto the body: and drinke often wine in this month: and eat meats dressed with Honey, and Cinamon, Pace, Putmegs, Ginger, Graines, Cloues, Calingale, and such like: and the same in drinke this moneth, doe cherish the blood, the heart, and all the body.

Of the falling sicke in any of the weeke daies, out of that ancient Phyfition Hippocrates.

Chapter 6.

And now if any first falleth sicke on the Sunday, & amendeth not of that sickness at the fift day after, he doth die in the ninth day following: but if he recouer and come to better health

health about the eight or ninth day after, then doth he recover perfect health about the fifteenth day following.

And if any first falleth sicke on the Sunday, then he shall recover health at the ninth day following: but if that sickness continue to the twelfth day, the patient shall then die in the fourteenth day after.

And if any shall fall sicke on the Tuesday, he shall then amend at the third day after: but if the sickness yet continueth, then death to be looked for without doubt, at the sixth or eighth day after.

And if any first falleth sicke on the Wednesday, and that at the seventh day falleth to good rest, and sleepeth, hee shall amend of that sickness: but if the sickness indureth to the twelfth day, and increasing unto the sixth or seventh day, he dieth then without doubt.

And if any first falleth sick on the Thursday, then he amendeth at the ninth day following: but if the sickness longer continue, yet amendment unto health at the fifteenth day following.

And if any beginneth to fall sicke on the Friday, he shall after amend at the seventh or eighth day following: but if that sickness longer indureth, then death to be feared at the fifteenth day after. And if that sickness shall somewhat abate at the eighth or ninth day after, then the patient shall recover to health at the sixteenth day following.

And if any falleth sicke on the Saturday, and that the same sickness doth continue to the sixth day, then the person dieth at the eighth day following: but if that person commeth unto health at the seventh day after, and sleepeth quietly that night without paine of the sickness, hee shall after recover perfect health at the fourteenth day following. And further note, that all men in health haue their urine or water in the morning white, before dinner againe redde, after dinner clearer and whiter, and at the evening before supper hot.

Of those manifest signes which declare raine
to follow. Cap. 7.

First a rednesse of the aire about the Sun being new risen, doth declare a token of raine to ensue.

And a like rednes of the aire about the Sun at the euening doth soe shew faire weather the next day following. And when about the Sun (after he is risen, or beginneth to set) shall appeare blacke or græne clouds, or blacke cloudes mixed with grænenesse, and a circle at that time likewise appearing about the Sun, or else shal ascend with blacke or græne cloudes, or appearing nere vnto a græennes, or else that the Sun shall haue large clouds both aboue & beneath him, doth declare raine and foule weather to ensue, either the same day or night following. And the like notes in the rising of the Sun, declare raine the same day, and the like at the euening, then raine to ensue that night following.

And the Sun appearing hollow or spottie, or else arising or setting vnder a cloud, doth declare raine to follow.

And when the Sun riseth or setteth bigger then customably it is seene, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing lesser in the arising then customably, or at the setting sheweth it selfe diuided into a blackish cloud, and that nere to the earth, doth declare raine to follow shortly after.

And when a blacke, long, and thicke cloud shall appeare aboue the Sunne, at the setting in the west, it doth declare raine to ensue.

And a mist about the Sun, when the same doth long tarry, or not quickly spent, doth declare raine to follow, in that the same is caused through the deawie and raynie vapours, caried betwæne the Sunne and our sight.

And when the Sun after his rising, sheweth through a thicke cloud broken open, and shooting out beames darkly, or else the Sun appearing diuided, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing the greater parte of the day through thin clouds, or a mistie aire the most part of the day,

so that the Sunne sheweth thozow it like to a round hole doth declare raine to follow. And when the Sun after the arising oꝝ the setting, especially in the spring and haruest, giueth forth mightie heate in a mistie aire, doth either declare wind oꝝ raine to ensue.

And when a thicke and blacke cloud appeareth about the Sun in the rising, and that by and by after the Sun is hid vnder that cloude, then doth it declare raine to ensue. But if the Sun be not hid of that cloude, then doth follow faire weather.

And the ouer-timely rising and appearing of the Sun aboue the earth, doth declare raine to ensue.

And when in the third night after the chang of the moone the hoznes appeare blanter and bigger then customably, it doth declare raine to follow in that month.

And the Moone hauing blacke spots in the toppes of her hoznes, doth then signifie showers in her first weekes, and if such spots at the full of the Moone appeare in the middle, then doth the same declare faire weather to ensue.

And if the third night after the Moone change, the south wind bloweth, then in the fourth day following it shall either raine moze oꝝ lesse.

And if the Moone be not sene befoze the fourth night, and that the south wind then bloweth, it doth declare raine to follow most parte of that month. And the Moone in her first appearing, shewing blacker of body then customably and hauing blacker hoznes, doth declare soule and raynie weather befoze the end of that month.

And the Moones beames at the blowing then of the south wind, shewing darker, bigger and shorzer downward toward the earth, doth declare raine to follow.

And this is a great token of raine to follow, when as the Sun in the day tyme, and the Moone in the night, doe appeare pale oꝝ blackish of colour.

And when the night is faire and cleare, and the Element appearing fuller of Starres then accustomably, doth then declare raine to follow shortly after.

And

And another note of raine to ensue, is when selwer stars appeare in the night then customably, so that our sight then is hindred through the vapours running in the aire.

And the appearance of blacke cloudes in the aire, and ascending of a mist or fogge upward, in that the vapours then be thicked together, doe declare raine to ensue.

And when the clouds in the aire be in a manner of all one colour round about, do then declare raine shortly after.

And cloudes appearing in the ayze like to flockes of wool, doe sometime signifie raine with colde, but no great raine, so that those flockes appearing, do declare the grossenesse of the vapours.

And white clouds appearing in the Sommer time, doe declare haile to ensue: but white clouds appearing in the aire in the winter time, doe declare snow to follow.

And when a mist or thinne Cloud doth happen in a drie season, and that the same ascendeth upward, and is turned into a thicke cloude, doth then declare raine to ensue, but the same falling downward whiles the raine indureth, or shortly upon the raine, doth then declare faire weather to ensue.

And if many white clouds appere nere the earth in the evening, so two or three daies together in the winter time, they doe then declare both cold and snow to ensue.

And the clouds in the winter time appearing whiter then customable, doe declare Snowe to follow, especially when after such appearance, the aire is then felt somewhat warme, through the heat which is then sent out of the cloud.

And the often changing of the wind, which is especially knowne by the course of the clouds, doth declare raine to follow, in that the cloudes be driven with the winds, and the vapours also gathered together, which through the thicking together, doth cause the raine to fall.

And the blowing of the South-winds doth declare undoubtedly raine to follow, in that those winds be hot and moist, and thereof doe so easily resolve the vapours from the

bodies aboue, which causeth the raine to fall. Also a gentle south wind doth euermoze send downe raine, when as the same beginneth to cease and wax still.

And the dew not faile in the accustomed season, and beginning then to fall, is a sure token of raine to ensue, in that the dew falleth not in the accustomed season, which perfectly declareth that the vapours which be in the matter of dew be then caried vp with others, and so thickned together into a rainie cloude.

And when the Raine-bow appeareth in the morning, before the middle of the day in the west, and the like at afternoon toward the evening in the East, doth vndoubtedly declare long raine to follow.

And the Raine-bow appearing in a faire day, doth declare raine to follow, but appearing after foule weather, doth declare faire weather to ensue.

And the Raine-bow appearing in the south, declareth much raine to follow, and appearing in the west, declareth thunder and a small raine to follow, and appearing about the evening in the east, doth promise faire weather.

And the greener the Raine-bow shall appeare, so much the longer raine doth follow. But the redder the Raine-bow doth appeare, euen so much the bigger also doth the wind ensue.

And if the same appeareth in faire weather, then doth it declare both raine and wind to ensue.

And the like a Raine-bow appearing about the Moon or about the light of a candle, declareth raine to follow.

And two Raine-bowes appearing at one time, as the one hanging downward from the south, & the other Raine-bow from the North, doe declare raine to follow.

And when the clouds and winds dye one way, or into one quarter together, declareth rain to follow without doubt.

And now these few Celestiall tokens here rehearsed, are both manifest & true, which any person of small knowledge may lightly conceiue and truly prognosticate vpon.

And further, the earthly signes be these: as first when that vapours

vapours bzeath out of the earth, as the like is manifestly felt by entring into any deepe vault or cellour vnder the earth, being especially within a citie or great towne, and that the pray giueth forth a mightie stinke, that then raine doeth shortly after follow.

And another note also of the earth is, when timely in the morning befoze day light a mist ariseth, which sheweth low on the earth, and that the Moone then shining, causeth the mist to shew in forme of a sea, and that after the Sun is risen, the same maketh the aire very darke, and blacke clouds also appearing in the aire, which together declareth a mighty raine to follow, and long enduring.

And when the dust is moze raised by then custonably, and that trees also much moze moued in the groues and woods, it doth declare raine without doubt, in that there is then a mighty bzeaking forth, both of many and grosse vapours.

And when riuers and welles be shallower of water then custonably, it then declareth raine to follow, in that the same matter and water falleth from the clouds, and of this when those impressiions be diminished, then be those moistures drawen vp, which so ingender the raine.

And the dzines of hands, and the clefts and roughnesse of the lips do declare raine to follow, in that the attractiue vertue of the moisture is then both mighty & strong, which so dzietieth the body, and maketh the lips rough. And of this the earthly bodies be altered accordyng to the altering of the celestially bodies about.

And when small birds in the beginning of winter, do gather & flie many in a company together, seeking their meat in such companies in the fielde, it after declareth colde and frosts to ensue, and stormy weather.

And al birds when they make a greater noise in the flying then custonably, and by trimming their feathers with their bills, doth declare raine to follow.

And all riuer sowles playing and beating themselves in the water, & washing themselves in that water, doe declare raine to ensue. And the like doe the riuer sowles by leaning

the water, and coueting the Shadowe, signifie raine to follow.

And the Geese making a loud noise together, and flying, doe signifie a tempest to ensue.

And the Bees seeking their hony neerer home than customably, doe declare a tempest, and rainie weather to ensue.

And when the Sheepe toward the evening, at their driving vnto fold, do feed moze earnestly in their going, and take no care of the Shepherds calling and crying vnto them, and that scarcely with strokes to be driven forward, do after signifie raine to follow.

And the bird named the Pie, chattering moze then customably, doeth after declare raine to ensue. And the swine drawing forth, tearing and hiding handfuls of hay, doe declare raine to follow.

And the Frogs making a greater noise then customably, do declare raine to ensue: and if the dew appeare not in the morning, so that the same be not hindered through the wind, after signifieth raine or frost to ensue, and this according vnto the time of the yeare.

And the Oxen licking the hooves of the hinder feet, and against the haire, and lying all alike on the right side, do declare raine to follow.

And beginning to raine, if the Oxen feede greedilier, doe then declare the longer continuance of raine. And the Dre beating with the soze foot, doth either declare raine or tempest to follow.

And the doves comming later vnto the dove-house then customably, doth declare raine to follow. And the sound of bells or clockes heard further off then customably, doth declare raine to follow, except the same be caused of wind.

Of those manifest signes which declare faire and drie weather to follow. Chap. 8.

And first, when either the Sun riseth, or setteth cleare, so that he be not covered of any clouds, doth then signifie faire weather that day following: if in the Sun rising, any

any circle appeareth about him of diuers colours, or that declineth vnto a fiery rednes, or that the Sun beames passing thorow the clouds, shalbe red and long (so that the beames seme like shots) and red scattered without the circle, doth then promise mightie winds to follow.

And the Sun setting red, declareth raine to follow, and if after the Suns setting in the West, red fiery clouds shall appeare, it declareth assuredly wind to follow.

And if the Sun shew red, or vnto an Orange colour befoze his setting, especially for a great season befoze his setting, or in a maner thorowout the whole day, and that in the West, he appeare of a great bignes, it doeth vndoubtedlie signifie wind to follow.

And the Sunne rising hot, and not tswinckling, declareth winde to follow: & if the Sun in the rising appeare hollow, declareth either wind or raine to follow: and if the Sun be felt hot many daies together, doeth after signifie drought and windes long continuing.

And if the Sun in the winter time toward his setting shal shew clearer and redder then customably, and that the north wind, or some other cold wind shall then blow, it doth signifie frost that night following.

And this declareth cleering of the weather in the time of raine, when as a brightnesse and cleering appeareth in the North-part, and that in the South-part appeareth swelled clouds heaped together.

And when after the Sun setting, the element appeareth blew, and few starres appeare, and that the dew be small, it doth declare faire weather the day following.

And if in the morning a mist appeare, which after the Sunne is risen, falleth down-ward, and riseth not vpward any moze to be seene of any, it declareth a faire day following.

And when many white clouds appeare, especially in the West (nere vnto the earth) and in the euening, and this for two or thre daies together in the winter time, it declareth both cold and snow to ensue.

And

And a frowning of the aire vnto raine, & that the clouds be then whiter then custumably, declareth snow to ensue, especially when after such an appearance of the clouds, the aire be felt somewhat hot, though the heat which is then sent forth out of the clouds.

And when the clouds dzine one way, and the wind another, and right against the going of the clouds, doth declare faire weather to follow. And the reason of this is, soz that the wind bloweth contrary vnto the going of the clouds, which dzieeth them in such sozt that they cannot raine downe.

And the stars seene to run or shot, declare wind to arise out of that quarter, and if they shot on euery side, then they declare wind to follow out of all the quarters.

And if the starres in the winter time appeare brighte then custumably, declareth a great colde to ensue. And the starres twinkling in the winter, doth declare a great colde and big frost to follow.

And if the stars be seene greater, both in light and bignes then custumably, doth then declare wind to follow.

And if the Wats do lie about timelier in the euening, and moze of them then custumably, doth then declare faire and hot weather the next day following.

And if the Mone after the third day of her change, appeareth in the West, with cleare and faire hoznes, and hath no mist about her, declareth faire weather to followe all that quarter.

And if the Mone appeare smal and red, and that also the same part of the mone, which then hath no light of the sun, appeareth cleare, and with a certaine dzining (as it seemeth vnto the eie) doth declare wind to follow out of that quarter from which the colours come, and about the Mone depart.

And if there appeare one cleare circle about the Mone, which sone vanisheth away, doth then declare raine to follow.

And where the Raine-bow appeareth but of two colours, as redde and yellow, and of no other colours, declareth faire weather

weather to follow. And lightning sene in the euening, without thunder and clouds, and that often together, and nere the earth, declareth a faire day following.

And clouds sene like vnto flöeces of wooll, scattered in the aire, and the sunne be then of a good height, declareth faire weather to ensue.

And the Northwind strongly blowing, although it causeth many clouds, both neuertheles cause faire weather to ensue for the more part.

And the noise of woods, and much mowing of the leaues, doth declare winde and a tempest to ensue.

And the Kites playing & wauering about in the aire, and that the one followeth the other in their flying, declare a hot and faire day to follow.

And if little flies, somewhat befoze the Sunnes setting, do gather round on a heape befoze the Sunne, and play vp and downe, declare a faire and hot season the next day following.

And if a white smoke be risen befoze the rising of the Sun, and after the Sun setting, vpon the waters, marishes, and medowes, it both signifie hot and faire weather the next day following: and if the same appeareth in the morning, then faire weather that day: and if at night, then faire weather the next day following.

And the Hedgehog, where he lieth maketh two holes, the one opening toward the north, & the other toward the south, and which of them he stoppeth, from the same part the winde ariseth: & if both at once, then great store of winde to follow.

And the Crow timely calling in the morning, declareth faire weather to follow: but crowing softly in the euening, declareth a tempest to ensue.

And the Crowe calling hastily twice or thrice together, declareth a tempest to follow.

And the dogge wallowing on the earth, declareth a great winde to follow: and lying on his right side, doth signifie a tempest to ensue.

And Oren also lying on the right side, declare a tempest to ensue: but the Dre lying on the left side, declareth faire weather

ther to follow. And the Ravens standing gaping against the Sunne, declareth a hot weather to ensue.

And the Rams skipping oftner then customably, if they but together with their heads, declare a tempest to follow.

And many long webs (which some call the spittle of the Sunne) dziving in the aire, declare winde or tempest to follow.

And the Ramme not changing his voice in faire weather, declareth the longer continuance of the same, as some ancient men wzite.

And a darknes of the aire after raine, declareth faire weather to ensue (as most autho:rs wzite.)

And when many shootes of fire (dzawing the taile after them) appeare in the aire, like vnto the shooting of the stars, which by fiery vapours, running & shining like vnto the light of the stars, dzawing after them a taile, doth declare wind to follow.

And if such vapours shote out of many quarters of the aire, they declare sundry winds to arise, and both thunder and lightning out of those parts.

And the dzinesse of things by a suddain maner in the winter time, and no rainie weather, like as of paper, the Marble Stone, and such like, declare frost and cold weather to ensue.

And when Cranes flie in straight order, and not bending or turning again, if declareth faire weather to ensue, for that they flie not in such order befoze they see the weather cleere.

And the clouds also in the cleere aire caried bpward, out of what quarter of the Element the same be, doeth signifie the wind to arise out of that quarter.

And if the clouds heaped together, by dzawing nere the Sunne be scattered, and this caused from the north, declareth wind to ensue.

And snow falling in the beginning of frost, if the same fall very small, declareth the mightier colde to followe: but if the snow fall bigge, then a suddaine thawe of the frost to ensue.

And

And the haile falling in the spring and harvest, declareth a faire season, and somewhat warme the same day : and this according to the time of the yeare.

And if any dreameth to see birds, it declareth wind to follow the next day, as hath bene experienced.

And windes in the winter blow about the morning, but in the Summer about the evening, and in the winter out of the East, and also in the Summer out of the West. And if wind continue long North, and the harvest windie, declare a still winter : but if the harvest be still, then a windie winter.

*The Booke of the Art or craft of Planting
and Graffing.*

To graffe fruite that shall haue no core.

TAke a graffe and bow both ends combing, and cut both ends graff-wise, and so fasten them into the stocke. And if it grow so with the tree, cut away the great end, and let the smaller end grow, and this fruit shall haue no core.

To make Apples red.

If you will make Apples red, take a graffe of an Apple tree, and graffe it in a stocke of Elme or Elvar, and it shall beare red Apples. Also you may boze a hole in an apple-tree to the pith, and temper it with water of what colour ye will, and then put it in the hole, and stop it with a pin, & the apple shall be of the same colour that you put in the tree.

It is to be noted, that enery tree that is planted vpon S. Lamberts day in the earth, shall not perish, but proue and come to profite.

To make the Pear-tree beare much fruit.

If you will haue a Pear-tree full of fruit, or else asmuch as it hath bin wont to beare, temper Scamony with water, and put it into a hole that is pierced to the pith of the tree, and stop the hole with a pin of that same tree, or of another, and it shall beare as it was wont, and much more plentifull.

And if thou wilt haue them to smel like spices, or as musk, or balme, or other spices: make an hole in like sort in the tree, and stop it againe, and the fruit shall smel and sauour after the spices.

To reuiue an old tree that is decayed.

If an old tree begin to waie drie, doe in this wise quicken him againe, so that the eares that are about the rootes be done away, and cleaue two or three of the greatest rootes with an axe, and put a wedge into the cleauing, and couer the roote againe with the same earth.

Note also.

Pierce the tree thorow with a piercer crosse twice, or with a wimble, and the strength of the tree shall begin to wax yong.

How to make a soure fruit tree bring forth
sweete fruite.

If you will haue a fruite tree that is soure, to bee made swete fruit, delue the tree round about, & dung the roots with pigges dung, and so shall the fruit be made sweete: also make an hole in the soure tree with a piercer to the pith, & into the hole put water tempered with hony, and stop the hole againe with a pinne of the same tree.

The ordering of an Almond-tree, Wal-nut-tree,
Cherry-tree, and Peach-tree.

Put the kernels of which of these yee will in water soure daies, and then put many kernels together into the earth, or seuerally: and when they spring and be growen out, and haue stood so a whole yeare, then take them out of the ground, and set them then where you will. And it is to be noted, that of euerie tree the branches must be cut in setting time, saue the Peach-tree, which must haue his drie branches cut onely.

How to nourish the Peach-tree, if it begin to wither.

If the Peach-tree begin to wither, let him be well moistened at the roote with dregs of wine, and the same moistning shall keepe him from shedding of his fruite: and some say, that if the rootes bee moistened with water of the decoction of beanes, it shall quicken the tree greatly: and if hee cast his fruite ere they bee ripe, make holes with a wimble in the
rootes,

rottes, & make pins of willow, and smite them fast in, and the fruite shall abide on fast enough.

How to water plants when they waxe drie.

It shall be good to water them when the time is drie in the first yeare: then when they haue put forth new cyons, leaue no more growing but the cyon which is the principall & fairest, vpon euery stocke one, all the other cut off hard by the stocke: & euer as they doe grow small twigs about the stocke, ye shall (in the moneth of March and Aprill) cut them all off hard by the stocke. And if you then stick by euery plant a pretie wand, and so binde them with willow barke, bzier, or others, it shall pzoofte them much in their growth. When after five or six yeares growth, when they be so big as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may then remoue any of them, whereas you will haue them grow and remaine.

The ordering of the Apple-tree.

If an Apple-tree begin to rotte, or any of the apples begin to ware rustie, then the barke of him is sicke: then cut it with a knife, let it be opened, and when the humo2 thereof is somewhat flowen ouer, see that you dung him well, and stop diligently his wound with clay.

The ordering of the Quince-tree.

The Quince-tree all the time that he is able to be translated, he would be remoued euery fourth yere, and that shall make him beare great plenty of fruit afterward.

The ordering of the Cherry-tree.

The Cherry tree loueth cold aire and moist ground, but some Cherry-trees like well in hilly places. The best setting of Cherry-trees is in the month of Nouember, and if neede be in the latter end of Ianuary. And if the Cherry tree rot, in any wise make a hole with a piercer vnder the ro2e, that the water that causeth the rotting may haue issue out. It is supposed that this medicine is good for all manner of trees that begin to rot. Also it is good for all manner of trees, when a bough is cut away, that the place that is cut be couered with clay, or some other defensible plaster, for the defence of the raine, that it make not the tree to rot.

At what time Prunes ought to be planted.

The planting of Prunes in colde and moistie places, is best in February and March, and the stones must be set a hand breadth in the earth, & when they haue stood so a whole yeare, take vp the springs of them, and set them deeper in the ground, and the stones must lie in water three daies ere they be set.

How the Medler should be planted.

The Medler will beare well if he be planted, but graffe him in a white thorne called an Haw-thorne, and they will beare moze plenteously.

The sowing of Roses in a garden.

If you will haue any Roses in your garden, you must take the hard pepins of the same Roses that be full ripe, and sowe them in the earth in February or in March, and when they spring, temper them with water, & after the space of a yeare, you must translate them, and depart them farther from other in what other place you will.

How to plant white Grapes.

If you will that a vine beare on one side white Grapes, and on the other side red, provide that a white Vine and a red be set nere together. And when they be rooted measurably both like much, of either pare away halfe endlong vpon the pith, and twine them together, and binde them so, that either sap mixe without disioining, and wrap it vp together with a supple linnen cloth, and euery third day moist it with water till it grow. And after that they be growne together, thou must cut away the one roote, and the other may beare it: and that Vine shall beare both red Grapes and white, notwithstanding the one roote be done away: and so thou maist doe with two Pear-trees, or two Apple tree branches.

How to set Vine plants two and two together.

You ought so plant and set your Vines two and two together, the one to haue a part of the olde tree, and the other may be all of the last ryon: but when yee plant with him a part of the old tree, he shall commonly take roote sooner then the

the new cyon. You must waerde them euery moneth, and let not the earth be too close about their rootes at the first, but now and then lose it with a spade as ye shal see a raine past, for then they shall enlarge, and put forth better.

To make Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or
Cherry-tree.

And if you will haue Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or a Cherry-tree, set a Vine vnder one of those two trees, which you will: and when the Vine beginneth to grow, boze the oth-
er tree thozow with a piercer, according to the greatnes of the Vine: then draw the vine thozow the tree, and pare away the vpper end of the same Vine, as farre as it shall be in the hole, and so suffer it to grow: and when both be ioyned together, cut away the roote ende of the Vine by the tree, and couer that place wel with good earth of that cutting and drawing of the Vine thozow the hole, and the cutting away of the roote of the Vine, and that must be done in March: and some men will say it must be done ere the knots beginne to burgen, that for the strait drawing in, the burgens bee not hurt. And thus maist thou doe with diuers trees, and diuers fruites, and make one tree to beare diuers fruites of sundrie colours. Also ye must see that at the vine be good earth, and spzed it selfe of many scourges, it is good to cut that off with a knife, and if it lacke yet ouermuch, delne the stocke about, and fill the pit full of grauell of a flood, medled with ashes. And some men say, doe into the pit a good quantitie of small stones, and that is good therefore.

The best times to Plant and Graffe in.

It is to be noted, that when the Moone is in Taurus, it is a good time to plant trees of Graines and Pepins: and when she is in Cancer, Leo, or Libra, it is good working of trees that be new sprung: and when the Moone is in Virgo, it is good time to sowe all manner of things. And from the middelt of September, vnto the middelt of December, is open time of planting: and right so from the middelt of Ianuarie, to the middelt of March, but yet in these times it is good to those when the Moone is 5, 6, 7, 8, or 10. dates before:

before the full. And after the full Moone, when she is 20, 22, 23, 24, 25 daies old, for this quarter of the Moone is most temperate.

Note also.

Every planting is to be disposed so, that the Sun beames may come to the roote, or to the earth, from the houre of thre or vnto none, and be planted in the best manner. And the trees that be bearing and of great height, that part that stood toward the North, must be set against the North wind, and the North-west winde: for the high North wind, and the North-west winde, by kinde doeth kill and dye too much the trees that be new set for their vnrmeasurable greatnes: the earth also must be ordeined so, that it be neither too fat nor grauelly, but proportionably.

How to set all manner of pepins, kernels, and graines in the earth.

All maner of pepins, kernels, and graines, must be set in the earth, in deepnes of foure or fve fingers broad, that each be from other halfe a foote: alwaies keeping this special rule, that the end or graine of the pepin that stands next the roote be North-east in the setting, and that other end upward toward heauen. And that you moist them twice or thrice in the day, not rotting, but dewing or sprinkling. This is a priuie among cunning men, that in the spring is most conuenient time for seedes, graines, and pepins: and Autumn for springes and plants.

Of the manner and changing of the fruit of the Pepin-tree.

Whensoever you doe replant, or change your pepin-trees from place to place, in so remouing often the stocke, the fruite thereof shall also change, but the fruite which doeth come of grafting, doth alwaies keepe the forme and nature of the tree whereof he is taken: for as often I haue said, so often as the pepin-trees be remoued to a better ground, the fruite thereof shall be so much amended.

How

How you may make an Orchard in
few yeares.

Some doe take yong straight slips, which doe grow from the rootes, or of the sides of the Apple trees, about Michaelmas, and do so plant and set them with oates in good ground, whereas they shall not be remoued, and so graffe being well rooted thereon. Other some do take and set them in the spring time after Christmas in likewise, and do graffe thereon when they be well rooted: and both waies doe spring well. And this manner of way is counted to haue an Orchard the soonest. But these trees will not endure past twentie or thirtie yeares.

How you ought to set the Pine-tree.

For to set the Pine-tree, ye must set or plant them of nuts in March, or about the shote of the sap, not lightly after: ye must also set them where they may not be remoued after, in holes well digged and well dunged, not to be transplanted or remoued againe: for very hardly they will shew forth cyons being remoued, specially if ye hurt the master root thereof.

To set Damsons or Plum-trees.

In setting Damsons or Plum-trees, which fruit ye would haue like to the trees they come of: if the said trees bee not graft befoze, ye shall take onely the cyons that grow from the root of the old stocke, which groweth with small twigs, and plant or set them, and their fruit shall be like vnto the trees they were taken of.

How to remoue a Setling.

When you will take a Setling that springeth out of another tree root, make and delue thereabout after the quantitie thereof, and so deepe till you come to the great roote that the spring groweth out of, and thou maist cut it off, and holding the edge of the knife toward the tree ground: and cut it so with slope draught, and leaue as much of the earth about the roote, and stocke of the setting as you may, and set it in a good

ground ordained therefore, and in a conuenient time, as it is befoze said, & if any spryng so groweth out of any tree, chuse that which groweth right out, that is not ouer-long, but euen, without any smal bzanches, holding the knife in cutting alway toward the tree.

How to remoue a great tree.

And if you will remooue a tree that is great or bearing fruit, chuse the full Moneth, from the middelt of October to the middelt of December, hauing vp the rootes as whole as you may, with the same manner and order as ye doe with setting of small trees: and in the setting, it forceth not though the Moneth be not euen in the full, so the be in the second or third quarter. The gouerning of these plants, is double of bearing of fruit.

How to keepe late set plants.

Also if you will keepe late set plants, keepe them from euening raines, and from winds, namely, in Haruest, for it is no great difficultie in the Spring. Against the comming of winter, set or sticke about the setting many boughes, that the Northerne winde, or greatnesse of other winds destroy it not: also put dunge mingled with straw about the stocke toward the roote, of a good thicknes, that frost and snow congeale not on the roote: and make a deepe valley about the roote, the space of sixe or seuen foote, that the water abide not and freeze about the roote in haruest, that is, betwene summer and winter, that when winter commeth, it may be filled with dung, and so let it stand all the winter: and in the spring, put vnder the dung new earth, and cut alway all the vnprofitable bzanches, and make it cleane about the stocke and the rootes, from wormes, scurfes, and mosses, and from euill weeds going about the bzanches: all the close of thine Orchard wholly beset about with other high trees that beare no fruit, that the floures might be kept safe from windes. And beware that no fruit be gathered of any tree befoze the time, for that is a right great, and pziue harming to the tree.

How you may keepe Cherries good a yere.

If you would keepe Cherries good a yere, ye shal cut off the stalkes, and then lay them in a well leaded pot, and fill the said pot with Cherries: then put vnto them of good thin honnie, and fill the pot also therewith. Which done, stoppe it with clay that no aire enter in, then set it in some faire cellar, and put sand vnder and all about it, and couer the pot withal, and so let it stand or remaine: thus ye may keepe them a yere, as fresh as though they came from the tree. And after this sozt ye may keepe peares or other fruit.

How you may set Chesnuts.

The Chesnut tree men do vse to plant like vnto the figge tree. They may be both planted and grafted well, they ware wel in fresh and fat earth, so in sand they like not. If ye will set the kernels, ye shall lay them in water vntil they do sink, and those that doe sinke to the bottome of the water be best to set, which ye shal set in the moneths of Nouember and December, foure fingers deepe, and a fote one from another: so when they be in those two moneths set or planted, they will endure long, and beare also good fruit. Yet some there be that plant or set them first in dung, like beanes, which wilbe sweeter then the other sozt, but those which be set in the two moneths aforesaid shall first beare their fruit: men may proue which is best, experience doth teach. This is another way to proue and know which Chesnuts be best to plant or set, that is, yee shall take a quantitie of Nuts, then lay them in sand the space of thirty daies, then take and wash them in water faire and cleane, and throw them into water again, and those that doe sinke to the bottome, are good to plant or set, and the other that swim are naught: thus may ye do with all other kernels or nuts.

The order how to plant or set trees at large.

This ought to be considered of all graffers & planters, that ye must giue a competent space from one tree vnto another,

When as yee make the holes to set them in, not too high nor that one tree touch another. For a good tree planted or sette well at large, profiteth oftentimes more of fruit, then three or foure trees set too high together. The most greatest and largest trees commonly are Wal-nuts and Ches-nuts. If ye plant them severally in ranke, as they doe commonly growe upon high waies, beside hedges in fields, they must be sette five and thirtie foote asunder one from another, or thereabouts: but if ye will plant many rankes in one place together, ye must set them the space of xlv. foote one from another, or thereabouts: and so farre ye must set your rankes one from another. For the Pear-trees and Apple-trees, and other sorts of trees, which may be set of this largenesse one from the other: if ye doe plant onely in rankes by hedges, in the fields, or otherwise, it shall be sufficient of xx. foot one from another: but if you will set two rankes upon the sides of your allies in gardens, which be of x. or xii. foote broad, it shall then bee best to giue them more space the one from the other in each ranke, as about five and twentie foote: also ye must not set your trees right one against the other, but entermedling or betwene every space, as they may best growe at large, that if neede be, ye may plant of other small trees betweene, but see that ye set them not too thicke. If you list to sette or plant all your trees of one bignes, as of yong trees like rods, being Pear-trees or Apple-trees, they must be set a good space one from another, as of xxv. or xxx. foote in square, as to say, from one ranke to another. For to plant or set smaller trees, as Plum-trees or Apple-trees of the like bignes, it shall be sufficient for them xiiii. or xv. foote space in quarters. But if you will plant or set two rankes in your allies in gardens, you must deuise for to proportion it after the largenesse of your said allies. For to plant or set eager or sower Cherry-trees, this space shall be sufficient enough the one from the other, that is, of x. or xii. foote: and therefore if you make great or large allies in your garden, as of x. foote wide, or thereabouts, they shall come well to passe, and shall be sufficient to plant your trees of nine or ten foote space: and so the other lesser

letter sorts of trees, as of Quince-trees, Nut-trees, and such like, they be not commonly planted, but in one ranke together.

The best way to cleanse and proine, or dresse
the rootes of trees.

And for the better cleansing and proining trees beneath, doe thus: ye shall take away all the weeds and grasse about the roots, then shall ye dig them so round about, as you would seeme to plucke them vp, and shall make them halfe bare, then shall ye enlarge the earth about the rootes, and where as ye shall see them grow faire and long, place or couch them in the said hole and earth againe: then shall ye put the cut end of the tree, where he is graft, somewhat moze lower then his roots were, whereby his cyons so graft, shall spring so much the better.

The manner of Graffing.

The great stocke must be chosen in good ground, and it must be smooth and even, and cutte it without the earth the length of a foote or moze, if it be as great as the thumb, if it be greater, looke that the cutting be even ouerthwart the stocke and aside, and it must be clouen aboue in the midst of the pith the length of two fingers bredth, & in the clift set the grasse, which must be chosen of the best tree. The stocke is of the chiefe grasse that standeth right vpward, that hath a knot of the former yeare. And an inch beneath the said knot, cut thy grasse, and thwite it on both sides, even in a manner of a wedge, as far as it shall goe into the clift of the stocke, it must be so even thwiten, that the aire may not come betweene the clift and the graft, and then close it with good tempered earth about the grasse, for defence of raine and weather.

How to graft diuers fruits on one stocke.

If thou wilt graft diuers fruits vpon one stocke, that hath as many branches as thou wilt haue grasses on, in euery branch set a grasse, in manner and forme as it is said befoze, and euermoze chuse the grasse on the Sunne side of the tree that beareth it, and next the top if you may, and then maist thou

thou graffe diuers fruits in one clift, but none of them may be thicker then other, as your reason will tell you in the working.

The way to graffe all sorts of trees.

First of all it is to be noted, that all sorts of frank trees, as also wild trees of nature, may be graft with grasses, and in the scutchin, and both do wel take, but especially those trees which be of like nature, therefore it is better so to graffe: howbeit they may wel grow and take of other sorts of Trees, but certaine trees be not so good, nor will prosper so well in the end.

How to graffe Apple-trees, Quince-trees,
Pear-trees, and Medlar-trees.

They graffe the peare graffe on other peare stocks & apple stocks, crab or wilding stocks: the Quince and Medlar vpon the white thorne. But most commonly they vse to graffe one apple vpon another, and both peares and quinces they graffe on halw thorne and crab stocke. Another kinde of fruit called in French Saulsay, they vse to graffe on the willow stocke, the manner thereof is hard to do, which I haue not seene, and therefore I will let it passe at this present.

How to chuse your trees for grasses.

When the trees wheras you intend to gather your grasses be small & yong, as of five or six yeares growth, doe not take the highest graft therof, nor the greatest, except it be of a small tree of two or three yerres, the which commonly hath too much of toppe or wood: otherwise not, for you shall but marre your grafting.

How you may keepe grasses a long time.

We may keepe grasses a long time good, as from Alhallowtide (so that the leaues be fallen) vnto the time of grafting, if that they be wel couered in the earth, halfe a foote deep therein, and so that none of them doe appeare without the earth.

After what manner ye ought to begin to graffe.

We may wel begin to graffe (in leauing the stock) at Christmas, or before, according to the coldnes of the time, & principally the healtie or great cherry, peares, wardens, or for-
ward

ward fruit of apples: and so; medlars, it is good to carry vnto the end of January and February, vntil March, or vntil such time as ye shall see the trees begin to bud or spring.

To haue fruit without cores.

To haue fruit without cores, looke yee haue a sufficient grasse-stock, and therewith (as I said befoze) chuse a grasse of good Perle tree, and cut it on this manner: The ende of the grasse that is vpwrd next the firmament, must be thwisted like the nether end of a coming grasse, & the nether end turned vpwrd: and this is to be done warily. This rule is true in all trees that haue stones and kernels, but a vine it behoueth to cut that is downeward next the earth, with great cunning and sleight.

How to trim your grasses.

Ye may graft your grasses ful as long as 2, or 3. trunchions or cut grasses, which ye may likewise grasse withall very wel, and be as good as those which do come of old wood and oftentimes better, as to grasse a bough: so often it so happeneth a man shall find of oylets or eies hard by the old tender wood, yet better it were to cut them off with the old wood, and chuse a better & a faire place, at some other eye aforesaid, and cut your grasses in making the incision on the one side narrow, & on the other side broad, as the inner side thin, and the outside thicke, because the outside of your grasse must ioyne within the cleft, with the sappe or barke of the winde stocke that it shall be set in: see also that ye cut it smooth, as your clefts are in the stock, in ioining at every place both euen and close, and especially the ioints or corners of the grasss on the head of the stocke, which must be well and cleane pared befoze, and then set fast thereon.

How to grasse vines on Cherry-trees.

If thou wilt haue a vine grow on a Cherry-tree, and haue the taste of cherries, set a vine by a cherry-tree till it grow, & in the beginning of Feuerell what time it be, make a hole thorow the Cherry-tree in what place thou wilt, and as often as thou wilt, and draw thorow the hole a branch of the vine,

vine, so that it fill the hole, and shau away the old barke of that vine, as much as shall be in the hole, and put it in; so that the shauen place of the bzanch stop ful the hole of the Cherrie-tree, and then cut away the roote ende of the vine, and wzap it well about with good earth, and binde it well with a little cloth, and kepe it wel in all things, as in other graffings: but some men leaue the roote end vncut a yeare, till it be solozed with the Cherry-tree, and then cut it away: and this is a good manner and a sure, and so it may be done with diuers trees of diuers fruits, and the grape and the vine shall haue sauo2 of them: and so in euery tree may be grafted another, and it is a merueilous grafting.

To make a tree beare diuers fruits.

If you will haue a tree beare diuers fruites, and of diuers colours, and diuers sauo2s: in the first yeare graffe in diuers bzanches of a Cherry-tree diuers Apples to thy liking, and leaue some of the bzanches vngrafted: the second yeare make holes thozow the Cherry-tree, and draw thozow thole holes, vine bzanches, the vtter end shauen off, as is befoze said: and in the same manner thozow another hole red Rose, and doe therewith as befoze is said of the vine: and this diuersity pee may vse after your owne liking.

March 14
1612
Matthias Nickeles is the owner of this Book

Empten upon Hamet

FINIS.

FINIS.



N X Nickeles



